



US007695902B2

(12) **United States Patent**  
**Crooke**

(10) **Patent No.:** **US 7,695,902 B2**  
(45) **Date of Patent:** **Apr. 13, 2010**

(54) **OLIGORIBONUCLEOTIDES AND RIBONUCLEASES FOR CLEAVING RNA**

(75) Inventor: **Stanley T. Crooke**, Carlsbad, CA (US)

(73) Assignee: **Isis Pharmaceuticals, Inc.**, Carlsbad, CA (US)

(\* ) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 611 days.

(21) Appl. No.: **10/078,949**

(22) Filed: **Feb. 20, 2002**

(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2002/0165189 A1 Nov. 7, 2002

**Related U.S. Application Data**

(60) Continuation of application No. 09/479,783, filed on Jan. 7, 2000, which is a division of application No. 08/870,608, filed on Jun. 6, 1997, now Pat. No. 6,107,094, which is a continuation-in-part of application No. 08/659,440, filed on Jun. 6, 1996, now Pat. No. 5,898,031.

(51) **Int. Cl.**

**C12Q 1/68** (2006.01)  
**C07H 21/02** (2006.01)  
**C12N 5/00** (2006.01)

(52) **U.S. Cl.** ..... **435/6**; 536/23.1; 536/24.1; 536/25.1; 536/183

(58) **Field of Classification Search** ..... 435/6, 435/375, 377, 455; 536/24.1, 24.5; 514/44  
See application file for complete search history.

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

3,687,808 A	8/1972	Merigan et al. ....	195/28
4,373,071 A	2/1983	Itakura .....	525/375
4,381,344 A	4/1983	Rideout et al.	
4,401,796 A	8/1983	Itakura .....	525/340
4,415,732 A	11/1983	Caruthers et al.	
4,426,330 A	1/1984	Sears	
4,458,066 A	7/1984	Caruthers et al.	
4,469,863 A	9/1984	Ts'o et al. ....	536/27
4,476,301 A	10/1984	Imbach et al.	
4,500,707 A	2/1985	Caruthers et al.	
4,507,433 A	3/1985	Miller et al. ....	525/54.11
4,511,713 A	4/1985	Miller et al.	
4,534,899 A	8/1985	Sears	
4,587,044 A	5/1986	Miller	
4,605,735 A	8/1986	Miyoshi	
4,667,025 A	5/1987	Miyoshi	
4,668,777 A	5/1987	Caruthers et al.	
4,689,320 A	8/1987	Kaji	
4,720,483 A	1/1988	Jansz et al.	
4,725,677 A	2/1988	Koster et al.	
4,757,141 A	7/1988	Fung et al.	
4,760,017 A	7/1988	McCormick	
4,762,779 A	8/1988	Snitman	
4,789,737 A	12/1988	Miyoshi	
4,812,512 A	3/1989	Buendia et al. ....	525/54.11

4,824,941 A	4/1989	Gordon	
4,828,979 A	5/1989	Klevan	
4,835,263 A	5/1989	Nguyen	
4,845,205 A	7/1989	Huynh Dinh et al.	
4,849,320 A	7/1989	Irving et al.	
4,849,513 A	7/1989	Smith et al.	
4,876,335 A	10/1989	Yamane	
4,904,582 A	2/1990	Tullis	
4,908,405 A	3/1990	Bayer et al. ....	525/61
4,924,624 A	5/1990	Suhadolnik et al.	
4,948,882 A	8/1990	Ruth	
4,958,013 A	9/1990	Letsinger	
4,965,350 A	10/1990	Inoue et al.	
4,973,679 A	11/1990	Caruthers et al.	
4,981,957 A	1/1991	Lebleu	
5,000,000 A	3/1991	Ingram et al.	

(Continued)

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

CA 2017369 1/2001

(Continued)

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Hunziker and Leumann, *Nucleic Acid Analogues: Synthesis and Properties in Modern Synthetic Methods* 1995, ed. Ernst and Leumann, pp. 331-417, 1995.\*

Ausubel et al. (eds.), *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology*, 1988, Wiley & Sons, New York.

Oligonucleotide Synthesis, A Practical Approach, M.J. Gait, Ed., IRL Press, 1984.

Oligonucleotide and Analogs, A Practical Approach, F. Eckstein, Ed., IRL Press, 1991, Chapters 1-7.

Beaucage S. et al., "Advances in the synthesis of oligonucleotides by the phosphoramidite approach", *Tetrahedron Letters*, 1992, 48, 2223-2311.

Beaucage S. et al., "The synthesis of modified oligonucleotides by the phosphoramidite approach and their applications", *Tetrahedron*, 1993, 49, 6123-6194.

(Continued)

Primary Examiner—Sean R McGarry

(74) Attorney, Agent, or Firm—Woodcock Washburn, LLP

(57) **ABSTRACT**

Oligomeric compounds including oligoribonucleotides and oligoribonucleosides are provided that have subsequences of 2'-pentoribofuranosyl nucleosides that activate dsRNase. The oligoribonucleotides and oligoribonucleosides can include substituent groups for increasing binding affinity to complementary nucleic acid strand as well as substituent groups for increasing nuclease resistance. The oligomeric compounds are useful for diagnostics and other research purposes, for modulating the expression of a protein in organisms, and for the diagnosis, detection and treatment of other conditions susceptible to oligonucleotide therapeutics. Also included in the invention are mammalian ribonucleases, i.e., enzymes that degrade RNA, and substrates for such ribonucleases. Such a ribonuclease is referred to herein as a dsRNase, wherein "ds" indicates the RNase's specificity for certain double-stranded RNA substrates. The artificial substrates for the dsRNases described herein are useful in preparing affinity matrices for purifying mammalian ribonuclease as well as non-degradative RNA-binding proteins.

**75 Claims, 10 Drawing Sheets**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS					
5,013,556 A	5/1991	Woodle et al.	5,414,077 A	5/1995	Lin
5,013,830 A	5/1991	Ohtsuka et al. .... 536/27	5,416,016 A	5/1995	Low et al.
5,023,243 A	6/1991	Tullis ..... 514/44	5,416,203 A	5/1995	Letsinger
5,034,506 A	7/1991	Summerton et al.	5,417,978 A	5/1995	Tari et al.
5,082,830 A	1/1992	Brakel	5,424,413 A	6/1995	Hogan et al.
5,082,934 A	1/1992	Saba et al.	5,432,272 A	7/1995	Benner
5,108,921 A	4/1992	Low et al.	5,434,257 A	7/1995	Matteucci et al.
5,109,124 A	4/1992	Ramachandran	5,446,137 A	8/1995	Maag
5,112,963 A	5/1992	Pieles	5,451,463 A	9/1995	Nelson
5,118,800 A	6/1992	Fung	5,453,496 A	9/1995	Caruthers et al.
5,118,802 A	6/1992	Smith	5,455,233 A	10/1995	Spielvogel et al.
5,130,302 A	7/1992	Spielvogel et al. .... 514/45	5,457,187 A	10/1995	Gmeiner et al.
5,132,418 A	7/1992	Caruthers et al.	5,457,191 A	10/1995	Cook et al. .... 536/27.13
5,134,066 A	7/1992	Rogers et al.	5,459,127 A	10/1995	Felgner et al.
5,138,045 A	8/1992	Cook	5,459,255 A	10/1995	Cook et al. .... 536/27.13
5,142,047 A	8/1992	Tullis ..... 514/44	5,462,854 A	10/1995	Coassin et al.
RE34,069 E	9/1992	Koster et al.	5,466,677 A	11/1995	Baxter et al.
5,149,782 A	9/1992	Chang et al.	5,466,786 A	11/1995	Buhr et al. .... 536/26.26
5,149,797 A	9/1992	Pederson et al. .... 536/27	5,469,854 A	11/1995	Unger et al.
5,151,510 A	9/1992	Stec et al.	5,470,967 A	11/1995	Huie et al.
5,166,315 A	11/1992	Summerton et al.	5,476,925 A	12/1995	Letsinger et al. .... 536/23.1
5,175,273 A	12/1992	Bischofberger et al.	5,484,908 A	1/1996	Froehler et al. .... 536/24.31
5,177,196 A	1/1993	Meyer, Jr. et al.	5,486,603 A	1/1996	Buhr
5,177,198 A	1/1993	Spielvogel et al. .... 514/45	5,489,677 A	2/1996	Sanghvi et al. .... 536/22.1
5,185,444 A	2/1993	Summerton et al.	5,491,133 A	2/1996	Walder et al.
5,188,897 A	2/1993	Suhadolnik et al.	5,502,177 A	3/1996	Matteucci et al.
5,194,599 A	3/1993	Froehler et al.	5,506,212 A	4/1996	Hoke et al.
5,212,295 A	5/1993	Cook	5,506,337 A	4/1996	Summerton et al. .... 528/391
5,213,804 A	5/1993	Martin et al.	5,506,351 A	4/1996	McGee ..... 536/55.3
5,214,134 A	5/1993	Weis et al.	5,508,270 A	4/1996	Baxter et al. .... 514/47
5,214,135 A	5/1993	Srivastava et al.	5,508,270 A	4/1996	Agrawal
5,214,136 A	5/1993	Lin	5,510,475 A	4/1996	Kornberg et al.
5,216,141 A	6/1993	Benner	5,512,295 A	4/1996	Kornberg et al.
5,218,105 A	6/1993	Cook	5,512,439 A	4/1996	Hornes
5,220,007 A	6/1993	Pederson	5,512,667 A	4/1996	Reed
5,223,618 A	6/1993	Cook et al. .... 544/276	5,514,785 A	5/1996	Van Ness
5,227,170 A	7/1993	Sullivan	5,514,786 A	5/1996	Cook et al.
5,235,033 A	8/1993	Summerton et al. .... 528/391	5,519,126 A	5/1996	Hecht
5,245,022 A	9/1993	Weis	5,519,134 A	5/1996	Acevedo et al. .... 544/243
5,254,469 A	10/1993	Warren	5,521,291 A	5/1996	Curiel et al.
5,256,775 A	10/1993	Froehler ..... 536/25.6	5,525,465 A	6/1996	Haralambidis
5,258,506 A	11/1993	Urdea	5,525,711 A	6/1996	Hawkins et al.
5,262,536 A	11/1993	Hobbs	5,527,528 A	6/1996	Allen et al.
5,264,221 A	11/1993	Tagawa et al.	5,527,899 A	6/1996	Froehler
5,264,423 A	11/1993	Cohen et al.	5,532,130 A	7/1996	Alul
5,264,562 A	11/1993	Matteucci ..... 536/23.1	5,534,259 A	7/1996	Zalipsky et al.
5,264,564 A	11/1993	Matteucci ..... 536/23.1	5,536,821 A	7/1996	Agrawal et al.
5,272,250 A	12/1993	Spielvogel	5,539,082 A	7/1996	Nielsen et al.
5,276,019 A	1/1994	Cohen et al.	5,539,083 A	7/1996	Cook et al. .... 530/333
5,278,302 A	1/1994	Caruthers et al.	5,541,306 A	7/1996	Agrawal et al.
5,286,717 A	2/1994	Cohen et al.	5,541,307 A	7/1996	Cook et al.
5,292,873 A	3/1994	Rokita	5,541,313 A	7/1996	Ruth
5,317,098 A	5/1994	Shizuya	5,543,152 A	8/1996	Webb et al.
5,319,080 A	6/1994	Leumann	5,543,158 A	8/1996	Gref et al.
5,321,131 A	6/1994	Agrawal et al.	5,545,730 A	8/1996	Urdea
5,354,844 A	10/1994	Beug et al.	5,547,932 A	8/1996	Curiel et al.
5,356,633 A	10/1994	Woodle et al.	5,550,111 A	8/1996	Suhadolnik et al.
5,359,044 A	10/1994	Cook et al. .... 536/23.1	5,552,538 A	9/1996	Urdea
5,366,878 A	11/1994	Pederson et al. .... 435/91.3	5,552,540 A	9/1996	Haralambidis
5,367,066 A	11/1994	Urdea et al.	5,556,948 A	9/1996	Tagawa et al.
5,371,241 A	12/1994	Brush	5,561,043 A	10/1996	Cantor et al.
5,378,825 A	1/1995	Cook et al. .... 536/25.34	5,561,225 A	10/1996	Maddry et al.
5,386,023 A	1/1995	Sanghvi et al. .... 536/25.3	5,563,253 A	10/1996	Agrawal et al.
5,391,667 A	2/1995	Dellinger ..... 526/264	5,565,350 A	10/1996	Kmiec
5,391,723 A	2/1995	Priest	5,565,552 A	10/1996	Magda
5,393,878 A	2/1995	Leumann	5,565,555 A	10/1996	Froehler et al.
5,395,619 A	3/1995	Zalipsky et al.	5,567,810 A	10/1996	Weis
5,399,676 A	3/1995	Froehler et al.	5,567,811 A	10/1996	Misiura et al.
5,403,711 A	4/1995	Walder et al. .... 435/6	5,571,799 A	11/1996	Tkachuk et al.
5,405,938 A	4/1995	Summerton et al.	5,574,142 A	11/1996	Meyer
5,405,939 A	4/1995	Suhadolnik et al.	5,576,302 A	11/1996	Cook et al.
			5,576,427 A	11/1996	Cook et al.
			5,578,717 A	11/1996	Urdea
			5,578,718 A	11/1996	Cook

5,580,575 A	12/1996	Unger et al.	5,719,262 A	2/1998	Buchardt et al.
5,580,731 A	12/1996	Chang	5,719,271 A	2/1998	Cook et al.
5,582,188 A	12/1996	Benderev et al.	5,721,218 A	2/1998	Froehler et al.
5,583,020 A	12/1996	Arnold, Jr. et al	5,726,297 A	3/1998	Gryaznov et al.
5,585,481 A	12/1996	Arnold	5,750,666 A	5/1998	Caruthers et al.
5,587,361 A	12/1996	Cook et al.	5,750,669 A	5/1998	Rosch et al.
5,587,371 A	12/1996	Sessler	5,750,692 A	5/1998	Cook et al.
5,587,469 A	12/1996	Cook et al.	5,760,202 A	6/1998	Cook et al.
5,591,584 A	1/1997	Chang	5,760,209 A	6/1998	Cheruvallath et al.
5,591,721 A	1/1997	Agrawal et al.	5,763,588 A	6/1998	Matteucci et al.
5,591,722 A	1/1997	Montgomery et al.	5,770,713 A	6/1998	Imbach et al.
5,594,121 A	1/1997	Froehler et al.	5,770,716 A	6/1998	Khan et al.
5,595,726 A	1/1997	Magda	5,777,092 A	7/1998	Cook et al.
5,595,756 A	1/1997	Bally et al.	5,780,607 A	7/1998	Goodnow, Jr. et al.
5,596,086 A	1/1997	Matteucci et al.	5,789,576 A	8/1998	Daily et al.
5,596,091 A	1/1997	Switzer et al.	5,792,608 A	8/1998	Swaminathan et al.
5,597,696 A	1/1997	Linn	5,792,747 A	8/1998	Schally
5,597,909 A	1/1997	Urdea	5,792,844 A	8/1998	Sanghvi et al.
5,599,797 A	2/1997	Cook et al.	5,792,847 A	8/1998	Buhr et al.
5,599,923 A	2/1997	Sessler	5,801,154 A	9/1998	Baracchini et al.
5,599,925 A	2/1997	Torii	5,804,683 A	9/1998	Usman et al. .... 536/25.31
5,599,928 A	2/1997	Hemmi et al.	5,808,023 A	9/1998	Sanghvi et al.
5,602,240 A	2/1997	De Mesmaeker et al.	5,808,036 A	9/1998	Kool
5,607,922 A	3/1997	De Clercq et al.	5,817,781 A	10/1998	Swaminathan et al.
5,607,923 A	3/1997	Cook et al.	5,830,635 A	11/1998	Agnello
5,608,046 A	3/1997	Cook	5,830,653 A	11/1998	Froehler et al.
5,610,289 A	3/1997	Cook et al.	5,837,835 A	11/1998	Gryaznov et al.
5,610,300 A	3/1997	Altmann	5,837,852 A	11/1998	Chung et al.
5,612,469 A	3/1997	Goodchild	5,840,876 A	11/1998	Beigelman et al.
5,614,617 A	3/1997	Cook et al. .... 536/23.1	5,854,410 A	12/1998	Arnold, Jr. et al.
5,614,621 A	3/1997	Ravikumar et al.	5,859,221 A	1/1999	Cook et al.
5,618,704 A	4/1997	Sanghvi et al.	5,861,493 A	1/1999	Cook et al.
5,623,065 A	4/1997	Cook et al.	5,872,232 A	2/1999	Cook et al.
5,623,070 A	4/1997	Cook et al.	5,874,553 A	2/1999	Peyman et al.
5,625,050 A	4/1997	Beaton et al.	5,891,683 A	4/1999	Usman et al. .... 435/91.31
5,627,053 A	5/1997	Usman	5,891,684 A	4/1999	Usman et al.
5,631,148 A	5/1997	Urdea	5,898,031 A	4/1999	Crooke
5,633,360 A	5/1997	Bischofberger et al.	5,914,396 A	6/1999	Cook et al.
5,634,488 A	6/1997	Martin, Jr.	5,936,080 A	8/1999	Stec et al.
5,635,488 A	6/1997	Cook et al.	5,945,521 A	8/1999	Just et al.
5,639,647 A	6/1997	Usman et al.	5,955,443 A	9/1999	Bennett et al.
5,639,873 A	6/1997	Barascut et al.	5,962,425 A	10/1999	Walder et al. .... 514/44
5,643,889 A	7/1997	Suhadolnik et al.	5,965,720 A	10/1999	Gryaznov et al.
5,645,985 A	7/1997	Froehler et al.	5,965,721 A	10/1999	Cook et al.
5,646,265 A	7/1997	McGee	5,969,116 A	10/1999	Martin
5,646,269 A	7/1997	Matteucci et al.	5,969,118 A	10/1999	Sanghvi et al.
5,652,355 A	7/1997	Metlev	5,986,083 A	11/1999	Dwyer et al.
5,652,356 A	7/1997	Agrawal	5,998,203 A	12/1999	Matulic-Adamic et al.
5,658,731 A	8/1997	Sproat et al.	5,998,588 A	12/1999	Hoffman et al.
5,658,873 A	8/1997	Bertsch-Frank	6,001,841 A	12/1999	Cook et al.
5,661,134 A	8/1997	Cook et al.	6,005,087 A	12/1999	Cook et al.
5,663,312 A	9/1997	Chaturvedula	6,005,094 A	12/1999	Simon et al.
5,663,360 A	9/1997	Bortolaso et al.	6,005,096 A	12/1999	Matteucci et al.
5,670,633 A	9/1997	Cook et al.	6,007,992 A	12/1999	Lin et al.
5,672,662 A	9/1997	Harris et al.	6,013,785 A	1/2000	Bruice et al.
5,672,695 A	9/1997	Eckstein et al.	6,015,886 A	1/2000	Dale et al.
5,672,697 A	9/1997	Buhr et al.	6,020,475 A	2/2000	Capaldi et al.
5,677,289 A	10/1997	Torrence et al.	6,025,140 A	2/2000	Langel et al.
5,677,437 A	10/1997	Teng et al.	6,028,183 A	2/2000	Lin et al.
5,677,439 A	10/1997	Weis et al.	6,028,188 A	2/2000	Arnold, Jr. et al.
5,681,940 A	10/1997	Wang et al.	6,033,910 A	3/2000	Monia et al.
5,681,941 A	10/1997	Cook et al.	6,037,463 A *	3/2000	Uhlmann et al. .... 536/24.5
5,684,142 A	11/1997	Mishra et al.	6,043,060 A	3/2000	Imanishi
5,684,143 A	11/1997	Gryaznov et al.	6,043,352 A	3/2000	Manoharan et al.
5,684,243 A	11/1997	Gururaja et al.	6,046,306 A	4/2000	Breipohl et al.
5,688,941 A	11/1997	Cook	6,051,699 A	4/2000	Ravikumar
5,698,687 A	12/1997	Eckstein et al.	6,087,484 A *	7/2000	Goodchild ..... 536/23.1
5,700,785 A	12/1997	Suhadolnik et al.	6,096,875 A	8/2000	Khan et al.
5,700,920 A	12/1997	Altmann et al.	6,107,094 A	8/2000	Crooke
5,700,922 A	12/1997	Cook	6,111,085 A	8/2000	Cook et al.
5,714,166 A	2/1998	Tomalia et al.	6,117,657 A	9/2000	Usman et al.
5,714,331 A	2/1998	Buchardt et al.	6,121,437 A	9/2000	Guzaev et al.
5,716,824 A	2/1998	Beigelman et al.	6,127,346 A	10/2000	Peyman et al.

6,127,533	A	10/2000	Cook et al.	2002/0071826	A1	6/2002	Tamarkin et al.
6,133,246	A	10/2000	McKay et al.	2002/0081577	A1	6/2002	Kilkuskie et al.
6,147,200	A	11/2000	Manoharan et al.	2002/0081736	A1	6/2002	Conroy et al.
6,150,510	A	11/2000	Seela et al.	2002/0102267	A1	8/2002	Lu et al.
6,153,737	A	11/2000	Manoharan et al.	2002/0132788	A1	9/2002	Lewis et al.
6,166,188	A	12/2000	Cook et al.	2002/0147332	A1	10/2002	Kaneko et al.
6,169,177	B1	1/2001	Manoharan	2002/0156235	A1	10/2002	Manoharan et al.
6,172,208	B1	1/2001	Cook	2002/0160393	A1	10/2002	Symonds et al.
6,172,209	B1	1/2001	Manoharan et al.	2002/0162126	A1	10/2002	Beach et al.
6,172,216	B1	1/2001	Bennett et al.	2002/1051512		10/2002	Peyman et al.
6,207,646	B1	3/2001	Krieg et al.	2002/0165189	A1	11/2002	Crooke
6,210,892	B1	4/2001	Bennett et al.	2003/0004325	A1	1/2003	Cook et al.
6,220,025	B1	4/2001	Mauti et al.	2003/0027780	A1	2/2003	Hardee et al.
6,222,025	B1	4/2001	Cook et al.	2003/0096286	A1	5/2003	Crooke
6,227,982	B1	5/2001	Wurster	2003/0096287	A1	5/2003	Crooke
6,239,265	B1	5/2001	Cook	2003/0096784	A1	5/2003	Crooke
6,239,272	B1	5/2001	Beigelman et al.	2003/0119777	A1	6/2003	Crooke
6,262,036	B1	7/2001	Arnold, Jr. et al.	2003/0125241	A1	7/2003	Wissenbach et al.
6,262,241	B1	7/2001	Cook et al.	2003/0139585	A1	7/2003	Uhlmann et al.
6,268,490	B1	7/2001	Imanishi et al.	2003/0143732	A1	7/2003	Fosnaugh et al.
6,271,358	B1	8/2001	Manoharan et al.	2003/0158403	A1	8/2003	Manoharan et al.
6,274,723	B1	8/2001	Nilsen	2003/0166282	A1	9/2003	Brown et al.
6,277,634	B1	8/2001	McCall et al.	2003/0175906	A1	9/2003	Manoharan et al.
6,277,967	B1	8/2001	Manoharan	2003/0187240	A1	10/2003	Cook et al.
6,281,201	B1	8/2001	Suhadolnik et al.	2003/0190635	A1	10/2003	McSwiggen
6,284,538	B1	9/2001	Monia et al.	2003/0206887	A1	11/2003	Morrissey et al.
6,287,860	B1	9/2001	Monia et al.	2003/0207804	A1	11/2003	Manoharan et al.
6,294,522	B1	9/2001	Zablocki et al.	2003/0224377	A1	12/2003	Wengel et al.
6,300,319	B1	10/2001	Manoharan	2004/0001811	A1	1/2004	Kreutzer et al.
6,307,040	B1	10/2001	Cook et al.	2004/0009938	A1	1/2004	Manoharan et al.
6,326,358	B1	12/2001	Manoharan	2004/0014957	A1	1/2004	Eldrup et al.
6,326,478	B1	12/2001	Cheruvallath et al.	2004/0018999	A1	1/2004	Beach et al.
6,329,346	B1	12/2001	Muhlegger et al.	2004/0029275	A1	2/2004	Brown et al.
6,331,617	B1	12/2001	Weeks et al.	2004/0102618	A1	5/2004	Crooke et al.
6,335,432	B1	1/2002	Segev	2004/0146867	A1	7/2004	Slattum et al.
6,335,434	B1	1/2002	Guzaev et al.	2004/0171033	A1	9/2004	Baker et al.
6,335,437	B1	1/2002	Manoharan et al.	2004/0180351	A1	9/2004	Giese et al.
6,344,436	B1	2/2002	Smith et al.	2004/0259247	A1	12/2004	Tuschl et al.
6,358,931	B1	3/2002	Cook et al.	2005/0020525	A1	1/2005	McSwiggen et al.
6,365,379	B1	4/2002	Lima et al.	2005/0080246	A1	4/2005	Allerson et al.
6,380,169	B1	4/2002	Adams et al.	2005/0142535	A1	6/2005	Damha et al.
6,395,437	B1	5/2002	Wollesen	2005/0164209	A1	7/2005	Bennett et al.
6,395,474	B1	5/2002	Buchardt et al.	2005/0181382	A1	8/2005	Zamore et al.
6,395,492	B1	5/2002	Manoharan et al.	2005/0221275	A1	10/2005	Bennett et al.
6,410,702	B1	6/2002	Swaminathan et al.	2005/0245474	A1	11/2005	Baker et al.
6,414,127	B1	7/2002	Lin et al.	2005/0273868	A1	12/2005	Rana
6,420,549	B1	7/2002	Cook et al.	2006/0127891	A1	6/2006	McSwiggen et al.
6,426,220	B1	7/2002	Bennett et al.	2007/0032446	A1	2/2007	Cook et al.
6,436,640	B1	8/2002	Simmons et al.				
6,440,943	B1	8/2002	Cook et al.				
6,444,806	B1	9/2002	Veerapanani et al.				
6,465,628	B1	10/2002	Ravikumar et al.	DE	3915432	A1	11/1990
6,476,205	B1	11/2002	Buhr et al.	DE	4110085	A1	1/1992
6,486,308	B2	11/2002	Kutyavin et al.	DE	101 00 588		7/2002
6,506,559	B1	1/2003	Fire et al.	EP	0260032	A2	3/1988
6,525,031	B2	2/2003	Manoharan	EP	0 266 168	A2	5/1988
6,528,631	B1	3/2003	Cook et al.	EP	0269574	A2	6/1988
6,531,584	B1	3/2003	Cook et al.	EP	0287313	A2	10/1988
6,534,639	B1	3/2003	Manoharan et al.	EP	0339330	A2	11/1989
6,559,279	B1	5/2003	Manoharan et al.	EP	339842		11/1989
6,573,072	B1 *	6/2003	Goodchild ..... 435/91.31	EP	0417999	A1	3/1991
6,593,466	B1	7/2003	Manoharan et al.	EP	1389637	A1	2/2004
6,656,730	B1	12/2003	Manoharan	JP	2-264792		10/1990
6,670,461	B1	12/2003	Wengel et al.	WO	WO 86/05518	A1	9/1986
6,673,611	B2	1/2004	Thompson et al.	WO	WO 89/12060	A1	12/1989
6,683,167	B2	1/2004	Metelev et al.	WO	WO 90/15814	A1	12/1990
6,794,499	B2	9/2004	Wengel et al.	WO	WO 91/06556	A1	5/1991
6,818,759	B2	11/2004	Beigelman et al.	WO	WO 91/10671	A1	7/1991
6,849,726	B2 *	2/2005	Usman et al. .... 536/23.1	WO	WO 91/15499	A1	10/1991
6,887,906	B1	5/2005	Teng et al.	WO	WO 92/02258	A1	2/1992
7,022,828	B2	4/2006	McSwiggen	WO	WO 92/03452	A1	3/1992
2002/0049173	A1	4/2002	Bennett et al.	WO	WO 92/03568	A1	3/1992
2002/0068708	A1	6/2002	Wengel et al.	WO	WO 92/07065		4/1992

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

WO	WO 92/20822	11/1992
WO	WO 92/20823	11/1992
WO	WO 92/22651	12/1992
WO	WO 93/07883	4/1993
WO	WO 93/24510 A1	12/1993
WO	WO 94/01550 *	1/1994
WO	WO 94/02498 A1	2/1994
WO	WO 94/02499	2/1994
WO	WO 94/02501	2/1994
WO	WO 94/17093	8/1994
WO	WO 94/23026 A1	10/1994
WO	WO 94/26764 A1	11/1994
WO	WO 96/07392 A2	3/1996
WO	WO 96/11205	4/1996
WO	WO 97/26270 A2	7/1997
WO	WO 97/30064 A1	8/1997
WO	WO 97/46570	12/1997
WO	WO 98/16550 A1	4/1998
WO	WO 98/39352 A1	9/1998
WO	WO 98/52614 A2	11/1998
WO	WO 99/14226 A2	3/1999
WO	WO 99/32619 A1	7/1999
WO	WO 00/08044 A1	2/2000
WO	WO 00/44895	8/2000
WO	WO 00/44914	8/2000
WO	WO 00/49035	8/2000
WO	WO 00/63364	10/2000
WO	WO 00/76554 A1	12/2000
WO	WO 01/29058 A1	4/2001
WO	WO 01/36641	5/2001
WO	WO 01/36646	5/2001
WO	WO 01/48183 A2	7/2001
WO	WO 01/49687 A2	7/2001
WO	WO 01/75164	10/2001
WO	WO 02/36743 A2	5/2002
WO	WO 02/38578 A1	5/2002
WO	WO 02/44321 A2	6/2002
WO	WO 03/004602 A2	1/2003
WO	WO 03/070918 A2	8/2003
WO	WO 03/072705 A2	9/2003
WO	WO 2004/015107 A2	2/2004
WO	WO 2004/041889 A2	5/2004
WO	WO 2004/043977 A2	5/2004
WO	WO 2004/043978 A2	5/2004
WO	WO 2004/043979 A2	5/2004
WO	WO 2004/044133 A2	5/2004
WO	WO 2004/044136 A2	5/2004
WO	WO 2004/044138 A2	5/2004
WO	WO 2004/044139 A2	5/2004
WO	WO 2004/044140 A2	5/2004
WO	WO 2004/083430 A2	9/2004
WO	WO 2004/097049 A1	11/2004
WO	WO 2004/113496 A2	12/2004
WO	WO 2005/027962 A2	3/2005

## OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Bhat et al., "A Simple and Convenient Method for the Selective N-Acylations of Cytosine Nucleosides", *Nucleosides and Nucleotides*, 1989, 8, 179-183.

Concise Encyclopedia of Polymer Science and Engineering, pp. 858-859, Kroschwitz, J.I., Ed., John Wiley & Sons, 1990.

Crooke, S.T. et al., "Progress in Antisense Oligonucleotide Therapeutics", *Annu. Rev. Pharmacol. Toxicol.*, 1996, 36, 107-129.

Crooke et al., "Kinetic characteristics of *Escherichia coli* RNase H1: cleavage of various antisense oligonucleotide-RNA duplexes", *Biochem. J.*, 1995, 312, 599-608.

Dagle et al., "Targeted degradation of mRNA in *Xenopus* oocytes and embryos directed by modified oligonucleotides: studies of An2 and cyclin in embryogenesis", *Nucleic Acids Research*, 1990, 18, 4751-4757.

Dagle et al., "Pathways of Degradation and Mechanism of Action of Antisense Oligonucleotides in *Xenopus laevis* Embryos", *Antisense Res. And Dev.*, 1991, 1, 11-20.

Dagle et al., "Physical properties of oligonucleotides containing phosphoramidate-modified internucleoside linkages", *Nucleic Acids Research*, 1991, 19, 1805-1810.

De Mesmeker, et al., "Antisense Oligonucleotides", *Acc. Chem. Res.*, 1995, 28, 366-374.

Englisch, U. et al., "Chemically Modified Oligonucleotides as Probes and Inhibitors", *Angewandte Chemie, International Edition Engl.*, 1991, 30, 613-629.

Haeuptle et al., "Translation arrest by oligonucleotides complementary to mRNA coding sequences yields polypeptides of predetermined length", *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 1986, 14, 1427-1448.

Eder, P.S. et al., "Ribonuclease H from K562 Human Erythroleukemia Cells", *J. Biol. Chem.*, 1991, 266, 6472-6479.

Goodchild et al., "Conjugates of Oligonucleotides and Modified Oligonucleotides: A Review of their Synthesis and Properties", *Bioconjugate Chem.*, 1990, 1(3), 165-187.

Kawasaki et al., "Uniformly Modified 2'-Deoxy-2'-fluoro Phosphorothioate Oligonucleotides as Nuclease-Resistant Antisense Compounds with High Affinity and Specificity for RNA Targets", *J. Med. Chem.*, 1993, 36, 831-841.

Kawasaki et al., "Synthesis and Biophysical Studies of 2'-dRibo-2'-F Modified Oligonucleotides", *Conf. on Nucleic Acid Therapeutics*, Clearwater, FL, Jan. 13-16, 1991, 10 pages.

Lengyel, *J. Enzym. Res.*, 1987, 7, 511-519.

Martin, "Ein neuer Zugang zu 2'-O-Alkylribonucleosiden und Eigenschaften deren Oligonucleotide", *Helv. Chim. Acta.*, 1995, 78, 486-504.

Menelev et al., *Bioorg. & Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1994, 4(24), 2929-2934.

Milligan, *J. Med. Chem.*, 1993, 36, 1923.

Monia et al., "Selective Inhibition of Mutant Ha-ras mRNA Expression by Antisense Oligonucleotides", *J. Biol. Chem.*, 1992, 267, 19954-19962.

Monia et al., "Evaluation of 2'-Modified Oligonucleotides Containing 2'-Deoxy Gaps as Antisense Inhibitors of Gene Expression", *J. Biol. Chem.*, 1993, 268, 14514-14522.

Reese, C.B. et al., "4-(1,2,4-Triazol-1-yl)-and 4-(3-Nitro-1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)-1-( $\beta$ -D-Arabinofuranosyl)cytosine(Ara-C)", *J. Chem. Soc. Perkin Trans. I*, 1982, 1171-1176.

Robins et al., "Nucleic acid related compounds. 41. Restricted furanose conformations of 3',5'-O(1,1,3,3-tetraisopropylidiloxy-1,3-diylo)nucleosides provide a convenient evaluation of anomeric configuration<sup>1,2</sup>", *Can. J. Chem.*, 1983, 61, 1911-1920.

Saison-Behmoaras, T. et al., "Short modified antisense oligonucleotides directed against Ha-ras point mutation induce selective cleavage of the mRNA and inhibit T24 cells proliferation", *EMBO*, 1991, 10, 1111-1118.

Sands et al., "Biodistribution and Metabolism of Internally <sup>3</sup>H-Labeled Oligonucleotides. II. 3',5'-Blocked Oligonucleotides", *Am. Soc. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.*, 1995, 47, 636-646.

Stein, C.A. et al., "Antisense Oligonucleotides as Therapeutic Agents—Is the Bullet Really Magical?", *Science*, 1993, 261, 1004-1012.

Strickland et al., "Antisense RNA Directed Against the 3' Noncoding Region Prevents Dormant mRNA Activation in Mouse Oocytes", *Science*, 1988, 241, 680-684.

Stull et al., "Antigene, Ribozyme and Aptamer Nucleic Acid Drugs: Progress and Prospects", *Pharm. Res.*, 1995, *Pharm. Rev.*, 12, 465-482.

Tseng et al., "Antisense Oligonucleotide Technology in the Development of Cancer Therapeutics", *Cancer Gene Therapeutics*, 1994, 1, 65-71.

Uhlmann et al., "Antisense Oligonucleotides: A New Therapeutic Principle", *Chem. Rev.*, 1990, 90, 543.

Westermann et al., "Inhibition of expression of SV40 virus large T-antigen by antisense oligodeoxyribonucleotides", *Biomed. B. Acta.*, 1989, 48, 85-93.

Agrawal, S. et al., "Synthesis and Anti-HIV Activity of Oligoribonucleotides and Their Phosphorothioate Analogs", *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.*, 1992, 2-10.

- Agrawal, S., "Antisense Oligonucleotides: Towards Clinical Trials," *Tibtech*, 1996, 14, 376-388.
- Akashi et al., "Novel Stationary Phases for Affinity Chromatography. Nucleobase-Selective Recognition of Nucleosides and Nucleotides on Poly(9-vinyladenine)-Supported Silica Gel<sup>1</sup>", *Chem. Letters*, 1988, 1093-1096.
- Alberts et al., "DNA-Cellulose Chromatography", *Meth. Enzymol.*, 1971, 21, 198-217.
- Arndt-Jovin et al., "Covalent Attachment of DNA to Agarose", *Eur. J. Biochem.*, 1975, 54, 411-418.
- Blanks et al., "An oligodeoxynucleotide affinity column for the isolation of sequence specific DNA binding proteins", *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 1988, 16, 10283-10299.
- Blomberg, P., "Control of replication of plasmid R1: the duplex between the antisense RNA, CopA, and its target, CopT, is processed specifically in vivo and in vitro by Rnase III", *EMBO J.*, 1990, 9, 2331-2340.
- Branch, A., "A Good Antisense is Hard to Find," *TIBS*, 1998, 23, 45-50.
- Bunemann et al., "Immobilization of denatured DNA to macroporous supports: I. Efficiency of different coupling procedures", *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1982, 10, 7163-7180.
- Bunemann, H., "Immobilization of denatured DNA to macroporous supports: II. Steric and kinetic parameters of heterogeneous hybridization reactions", *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 1982, 10, 7181-7196.
- Chodosh et al., "A Single Polypeptide Possesses the Binding and Transcription Activities of the Adenovirus Major Late Transcription Factor", *Mol. Cell. Biol.*, 1986, 6, 4723-4733.
- Crooke et al., "Pharmacokinetic Properties of Several Novel Oligonucleotide Analogs in mice", *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.*, 1996, 277, 923-927.
- Dake et al., "Purification and Properties of the Major Nuclease from Mitochondria of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*", *J. Biol. Chem.*, 1988, 263, 7691-7702.
- Day et al., "Immobilization of polynucleotides on magnetic particles", *Biochem. J.*, 1991, 278, 735-740.
- Drmanac et al., "DNA Sequence Determination by Hybridization: A Strategy for Efficient Large-Scale Sequencing", *Science*, 1993, 260, 1649-1652.
- Duncan et al., "Affinity Chromatography of a Sequence-Specific DNA Binding Protein Using Teflon-Linked Oligonucleotides", *Anal. Biochem.*, 1988, 169, 104-108.
- Dunn, J.J. et al., "Effect of RNAase III Cleavage on Translation of Bacteriophage T7 Messenger RNAs", *J. Mol. Biol.*, 1975, 99, 487-499.
- Elala et al., "RNase III Cleaves Eukaryotic Preribosomal RNA at a U3 snoRNP-Dependent Site", *Cell*, 1996, 85, 115-124.
- Fahy et al., "Design and synthesis of polyacrylamide-based oligonucleotide supports for use in nucleic acid diagnostics", *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1993, 21, 1819-1826.
- Fishel et al., "Z-DNA Affinity Chromatography", *Methods Enzymol.*, 1990, 184, 328-342.
- Fodor et al., "Light-Directed, Spatially Addressable Parallel Chemical Synthesis", *Science*, 1991, 251, 767-773.
- Fusi et al., "Ribonucleases from the extreme thermophilic archaeobacterium *S. solfataricus*", *Eur. J. Biochem.*, 1993, 16, 305-310.
- Gabrielsen et al., "Magnetic DNA affinity purification of yeast transcription factor  $\tau$ - a new purification principle for the ultrarapid isolation of near homogeneous factor", *Nucleic Acids Research*, 1989, 17, 6253-6267.
- Gbenle, "Trypanosoma brucei: Calcium-Dependent Endoribonuclease is Associated with Inhibitor Protein", *Exp. Parasitol.*, 1990, 71, 432-438.
- Gbenle, "Simultaneous Isolation of Cytoplasmic Endoribonuclease and Exoribonuclease of *Trypanosoma brucei*", *Mol. Biochem. Parasitol.*, 1985, 15, 37-47.
- Gerdes, K. et al., "Mechanism of Killer Gene Activation. Antisense RNA-dependent RNase III Cleavage Ensures Rapid Turn-over of the Stable-Hok, SrnB and PndA Effector Messenger RNAs", *J. Mol. Biol.*, 1992, 226, 637-649.
- Gingeras et al., "Hybridization properties of immobilized nucleic acids", *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1987, 15, 5373-5391.
- Goldkorn, T. et al., "A simple and efficient enzymatic method for covalent attachment of DNA to cellulose. Application for hybridization-restriction analysis and for in vitro synthesis of DNA probes", *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 1986, 14, 9171-9191.
- Goss, T.A. et al., "High-performance affinity chromatography of DNA", *J. Chromatogr.*, 1990, 508, 279-287.
- Guo, et al., "Direct fluorescence analysis of genetic polymorphisms by hybridization with oligonucleotide arrays on glass supports", *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1994, 22, 5456-5465.
- Hyrup, B. et al., "Peptide Nucleic Acids (PNA): Synthesis, Properties and Potential Applications", *Bioorganic & Med. Chem.*, 1996, 4, 5-23.
- Kadonaga, J.T. et al., "Affinity purification of sequence-specific DNA binding proteins", *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 1986, 83, 5889-5893.
- Kadonaga, J.T., "Purification of Sequence-Specific Binding Proteins by DNA Affinity Chromatography", *Methods in Enzymology*, 1991, 208, 10-23.
- Kasher et al., "Rapid Enrichment of HeLa Transcription Factors IIIB and IIIC by Using Affinity Chromatography Based on Avidin-Biotin Interactions", *Mol. Cell. Biol.*, 1986, 6, 3117-3127.
- Kawaguchi et al., "Purification of DNA-binding transcription factors by their selective adsorption of the affinity latex particles", *Nucleic Acids Research*, 1989, 17, 6229-6240.
- Kennedy, "Hydrophobic Chromatography", *Methods in Enzymology*, 1990, 182, 339-343.
- Knecht, D., "Application of Antisense RNA to the Study of the Cytoskeleton: Background, Principles, and a Summary of Results Obtained with Myosin Heavy Chain", *Cell Motil. Cytoskel.*, 1989, 14, 92-102.
- Knochbin et al., "An antisense RNA involved in p53 mRNA maturation in murine erythroleukemia cells induced to differentiate", *EMBO J.*, 1989, 8, 4107-4114.
- Krinke, L. et al., "RNase III-dependent hydrolysis of  $\lambda$ CII-O gene mRNA mediated by  $\lambda$  OOP antisense RNA", *Genes & Devel.*, 1990, 4, 2223-2233.
- Krystal et al., "N-myc mRNA Forms an RNA-RNA Duplex with Endogenous Antisense Transcripts", *Mol. And Cell. Biol.*, 1990, 10, 4180-4191.
- Liao, "A pyrimidine-guanine sequence-specific ribonuclease from *Rana catesbeiana* (bullfrog) oocytes", *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1992, 20, 1371-1377.
- Lohrmann et al., "New Solid Supports for DNA Synthesis", *DNA*, 1984, 3, 122.
- Lund et al., "Assessment of methods for covalent binding of nucleic acids to magnetic beads, Dynabeads<sup>®</sup>, and the characteristics of the bound nucleic acids in hybridization reactions", *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1988, 16, 10861-10880.
- Maniak, M. et al., "Evidence for a feedback regulated back-up promoter which controls permanent expression of a *Dictyostelium* gene", *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1990, 18, 5375-5380.
- Matson et al., "Biopolymer Synthesis on Polypropylene Supports", *Anal. Biochem.*, 1994, 217, 306-310.
- Maskos, U. et al., "Oligonucleotide hybridisations on glass supports: a novel linker for oligonucleotide synthesis and hybridisation properties of oligonucleotides synthesised in situ", *Nucl. Acids. Res.*, 1992, 20, 1679-1684.
- Meegan, J.M. et al., "Double-Stranded Ribonuclease Coinduced with Interferon", *Science*, 1989, 244, 1089-1091.
- Meteliev, et al., "Study of antisense oligonucleotide phosphorothioates containing segments of oligodeoxynucleotides and 2'-methyloligoribonucleotides", *Bioorg. & Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1994, 4, 2929-2934.
- Monia, et al., "Antitumor activity of a phosphorothioate antisense oligodeoxynucleotide targeted against c-raf kinase", *Nature Medicine*, 1996, 2, 668-675.
- Narhi et al., "Hydrophobic Interaction Chromatography in Alkaline pH", *Anal. Biochem.*, 1989, 182, 266-270.
- Nellen, W.C., "What makes an mRNA anti-sense-itive?", *Curr. Opin. Cell. Biol.*, 1993, 18, 419-424.
- Nellen, W. et al., "Mechanisms of gene regulation by endogenous and artificially introduced antisense RNA", *Biochem., Soc. Trans.*, 1992, 20, 750-754.

- Nitta et al., "Purification and Some Properties of Ribonuclease from *Xenopus laevis* Eggs", *Biol. Pharm. Bull. (Jpn.)*, 1993, 16, 353-356.
- Noguchi et al., "Characterization of an Antisense Inr Element in the eIF-2 $\alpha$  Gene", *J. Biol. Chem.*, 1994, 269, 29161-29167.
- Noyes et al., "Nucleic Acid Hybridization Using DNA Covalently Coupled to Cellulose", *Cell*, 1975, 5, 301-310.
- Ohtsuki, et al., "Isolation and purification of double-stranded ribonuclease from calf thymus", *J. Biol. Chem.*, 1977, 252, 483-491.
- Pease et al., "Light-generated oligonucleotide arrays for rapid DNA sequence analysis", *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 1994, 91, 5022-5026.
- Pon et al., "Derivatization of Controlled Pore Glass Beads for Solid Phase Oligonucleotide Synthesis", *BioTech.*, 1988, 6, 768-773.
- Prokipcak et al., "Purification and Properties of a Protein that Binds to the C-terminal Coding Region of Human c-myc mRNA", *J. Biol. Chem.*, 1994, 269, 9261-2969.
- Saito, H. et al., "Processing of mRNA by Ribonuclease III Regulates Expression of Gene 1.2 of Bacteriophage T7", 1981, *Cell*, 27, 533-542.
- Schott, "Template-Chromatographie An Stationar Gebundenen Oligonukleotiden", *J. Chromatogr.*, 1975, 115, 461-476.
- Seliger, H., "Handelsubliche Polymere als Trager in der Oligonucleotidsynthese, 1", *Die Makromolekulart Chemie*, 1975, 176, 1611-1627.
- Seliger, H. et al., "Trager-Oigonucleotidsynthese an unvernetzten Copolymeren aus Vinylalkohol und N-Vinylpyrrolidon", *Die Makromolekulare Chemie*, 1975, 176, 609-627.
- Seliger, H. et al., "Oligonucleotide Synthesis on a Polymer Support Soluble in Water and Pyridine", *Tetrahedron Letters*, 1973, No. 31, 2911-2914.
- Shibahara, S. et al., "Inhibition of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV-1) replication by synthetic oligo-RNA derivatives", *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1989, 17(1), 239-252.
- Siddell, S.G., "RNA Hybridization to DNA Coupled with Cyanogen-Bromide-Activated Sephadex", *Eur. J. Biochem.*, 1978, 92, 621-629.
- Smith et al., "The synthesis of oligonucleotides containing an aliphatic amino group at the 5' terminus: synthesis of fluorescent DNA primers for use in DNA sequence analysis", *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1985, 13, 2399-2412.
- Stoldt, P. et al., "Antisense RNA mediates transcriptional processing in an archaeobacterium, indicating a novel kind of RNase activity", *Mol. Microbiol.*, 1993, 7, 875-882.
- Syvanen et al., "Quantification of polymerase chain reaction products by affinity-based hybrid collection", *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1988, 16, 11327-11338.
- Szyf et al., "Growth Regulation of Mouse DNA Methyltransferase Gene Expression", *J. Biol. Chem.*, 1991, 266, 10027-10030.
- McBride, L.J. et al., "An Investigation of Several Deoxynucleoside Phosphoramidites Useful for Synthesizing Deoxyoligonucleotides", *Tetrahedron Letters*, 1983, 24, 245-248.
- Van Ness et al., "A versatile solid support system for oligodeoxynucleotide probe-based hybridization assays", *Nucleic Acids Research*, 1991, 19, 3345-3350.
- Volk et al., "An antisense transcript from the *Xenopus laevis* bFGF gene coding for an evolutionarily conserved 24 kd protein", *EMBO J.*, 1989, 8, 2983-2988.
- Wetlaufer et al., "Surfactant-Mediated Protein Hydrophobic-Interaction Chromatography", *J. Chromatography*, 1986, 359, 55-60.
- Wu et al., "Purification and Properties of *Drosophila* Heat Shock Activator Protein", *Science*, 1987, 238, 1247-1253.
- Wu et al., "High Resolution Separation and Analysis of Biological Macromolecules", *Methods in Enzymology*, 1996, 270, 27-47.
- Yashima et al., "High-performance affinity chromatography of oligonucleotides on nucleic acid analogue immobilized silica gel columns", *J. Chromatog.*, 1992, 603, 111-119.
- Yasuda et al., "Purification and characterization of a ribonuclease from human spleen", *Eur. J. Biochem.*, 1990, 191, 523-529.
- Zarytova et al., "Affinity Chromatography of DNA Fragments and P-Modified Oligonucleotides", *Analyt. Biochem.*, 1990, 188, 214-218.
- Zuckermann et al., "Efficient methods for attachment of thiol specific probes to the 3'-ends of synthetic oligodeoxyribonucleotides", *Nucleic Acids Research*, 1987, 15, 5305-5321.
- Arya, S. K. et al., "Inhibition of RNA Directed DNA Polymerase of Murine Leukemia Virus by 2'-O-Alkylated Polyadenylic Acids," *Biochem Biophys Res Commun.* 1974, 59(2), 608-615.
- Arya, S. K. et al., "Inhibition of Synthesis of Murine Leukemia Virus in Cultured Cells by Polyribonucleotides and Their 2'-O-Alkyl Derivatives," *Molecular Pharmacology*, 1976, 12, 234-241.
- DeClercq, E. et al., "Influence of various 2- and 2'-substituted polyadenyl acids on murine leukemia virus reverse transcriptase," *Cancer Letters*, 1979, 7, 27-37.
- Hobbs, J. et al., "Polynucleotides Containing 2'-Amino 2'-deoxyribose and 2'-Azido-2'-deoxyribose," *Biochem.*, 1973, 12, 5138-5145.
- Hobbs, J. et al., "Poly 2'-Deoxy-2'-Aminouridylic Acid," *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 1972, 46(4), 1509-1515.
- Hobbs, J. et al., "Polynucleotides Containing 2'-Chloro-2'-deoxyribose," *Biochem.*, Eckstein et al., Ed., 1972, 11, 4336-4344.
- Pieken, W. et al., "Kinetic Characterization of Ribonuclease-Resistant 2'-Modified Hammerhead Ribozymes," *Science*, 1991, 253, 314-317.
- Pilet, J. et al., "Structural parameters of single and double helical polyribonucleotides," *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*, 1973, 52(2), 517-523.
- Rottman, F. et al., "Polynucleotides Containing 2'-O-Methyladenosine. I. Synthesis by Polynucleotide Phosphorylase," *Biochem*, 1968, 7, 2634-2641.
- Rottman, F. et al., "Polymers Containing 2'-O-Methylnucleotides. II. Synthesis of Heteropolymers," *Biochem*, 1969, 8(11), 4354-4361.
- Wincott et al., "Synthesis, deprotection, analysis and purification of RNA and ribozymes," *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1995, 23(14), 2677-2684.
- Zmudzka, B. et al., "Poly 2'-0-methylcytidylic acid and the role of the 2'-hydroxyl in polynucleotide structure," *Biochem Biophys Res Commun*, 1969, 37(6), 895-901.
- Hamilton et al., "A species of small antisense RNA in post-transcriptional gene silencing in plants," *Science* (1999) 286(5441):950-952.
- Hunter, "Genetics: a touch of elegance with RNAi," *Current Biology*, *Current Science* (1999) 9(12):R440-R442.
- Kumar et al., "Antisense RNA: function and fate of duplex RNA in cells of higher eukaryotes," *Microbiology and Molecular Biology Reviews* (1998) 62(4):1415-1434.
- Opalinska et al., "Nucleic-acid therapeutics: basic principles and recent applications," *Nature Reviews* (2002) 1:503-514.
- Milligan et al., "Current concepts in antisense drug design," *J of Medicinal Chemistry* (1993) 36(1):1923-1927.
- Struck, "Vaccine R&D Success Rates And Development Times," *Nature Biotechnology*, May 1996, vol. 14, pp. 591-593.
- Ohtsuka et al., "Recognition By Restriction Endonuclease EcoRI Of Deoxyoctanucleotides Containing Modified Sugar Moieties," *J. Biochem*, 1984, vol. 139, pp. 447-450.
- International Search Report Dated Aug. 23, 2004 for International Application No. PCT/US03/09808.
- Alahari, *J. Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics*, 1998, 286, 419-428.
- Beigelman, *J. Biol Chem*, 1995, 270, 25702-25708.
- Berger, *Nucleic Acids Research*, 1998, 26, 2473-2480.
- Bevilacqua, *Biochemistry*, 1996, 35, 9983-9994.
- Boutla, *Current Biology*, 2001, 11, 1776-1780.
- Cook, *Anti-Cancer Drug Design*, 1991, 6, 585-607.
- Damha, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 120:12976-12977.
- Elbashir, *EMBO J.*, 2001, 20, 6877-6888.
- Hammond, *Nature*, 2001, 2, 110-119.
- Kimura-Harada, *FEBS Lett.*, 1971, 13, 335-338.
- Koizumi, *Nucleic Acids Research*, 1989, 17, 7059-7071.
- Kuimelis, *Nucleic Acids Res.* 1994, 22, 1429-1436.
- Lesnik, *Biochemistry*, 1995, 34, 10807-10815.
- Parrish, *Molecular Cell*, 2000, 6, 1077-1087.
- Porta, *Biotechnology*, 1995, 13, 161-164.
- Shuman, *J. Biol Chem*, 1993, 268, 18943-18950.
- Tosquellas, *Nucleic Acids Research*, 1998, 26, 2069-2074.
- Tracewell, *Toxicology and Applied Pharmacology*, 1995, 135, 179-184.
- Tuschl, *Molecular Interventions*, 2002, 2, 158-167.
- Veronese, *II Farmaco*, 1999, 54, 497-516.

- Wilds, *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 2000, 28, 3625-3635.
- Wu, *J Biol. Chem.*, 1998, 273, 2532-2542.
- Yu, *RNA*, 1997, 324-331.
- Yu, *Bioorganic and Medicinal Chemistry*, 1996, 4, 1685-1692.
- Leydier, C. et al., "4'-Thio-RNA: Synthesis of Mixed Base 4'-Thio-Oligoribonucleotides, Nuclease Resistance, and Base Pairing Properties with Complementary Single and Double Strand," *Antisense Research and Development*, 1995, 5, 167-174.
- Abe, A., et al., "Conformational energies and the random-coil dimensions and dipole moments of the polyoxides  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}[\text{CH}_2\text{yO}]_x\text{CH}_3$ ," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1976, 98(21), 6468-6476.
- Afonina, I. et al., "Sequence-specific arrest of primer extension on single-stranded DNA by an oligonucleotide-minor groove binder conjugate," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* (1996) 93:3199-3204.
- Agrawal, et al., "Oligodeoxynucleoside Phosphoramidates and Phosphorothioates as Inhibitors of Human Immunodeficiency Virus" *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 1988, 85, 7079-7083.
- Agarwal, et al., "Synthesis and Enzymatic Properties of Deoxyribooligonucleotides Containing Methyl and Phenylphosphonate Linkages", *Nucleic Acid Research* 1979, 6, 3009-3024.
- Agrawal, S. et al., "Antisense therapeutics: is it as simple as complementary base recognition?," *Molecular Med. Today*, vol. 6(2), pp. 72-81 (2000).
- Agris, et al., "Inhibition of Vesicular Stomatitis Virus Protein Synthesis and Infection by Sequence-Specific Oligodeoxyribonucleoside Methylphosphonates", *Biochemistry* 1986, 25, 6268-6275.
- Allerson, C.R. et al., abstract of the 227th ACS National Meeting, Anaheim, CA, Mar. 28-Apr. 1, 2004.
- Allerson, C.R. et al., "Fully 2'-Modified Oligonucleotide Duplexes with Improved in Vitro Potency and Stability Compared to Unmodified Small Interfering RNA," *J. Med. Chem.*, 2005, 48, 901-904.
- Altmann, K.-H. et al., "Second generation antisense oligonucleotides - inhibition of PKC-alpha and c-RAF kinase expression by chimeric oligonucleotides incorporating 6'-substituted carbocyclic nucleosides and 2'-O-ethylene glycol substituted ribonucleosides," *Nucleosides & Nucleotides*, 1997, 16(7-9), 917-926.
- Altmann, K.-H., et al., "Second generation of antisense oligonucleotides: from nuclease resistance to biological efficacy in animals," *Chimia*, 1996, 50, 168-176.
- Altmann, K.H., et al., "Second-generation antisense oligonucleotides: structure-activity relationships and the design of improved signal-transduction inhibitors," *Biochem. Soc. Trans.*, 1996, 24, 630-637.
- Altschul, S.F. et al., "Basic Local Alignment Search Tool," *J. Mol. Biol.*, 1990, 215, 403-410.
- Ambros, V. et al., "A uniform system for MicroRNA annotation," *RNA* (2003) 9: 277-279.
- Ambros, V. et al., "MicroRNAs and Other Tiny Endogenous RNAs in *C. elegans*," *Curr Biol.* (2003) 13: 807-818.
- Ambros, V. et al., "MicroRNAs: Tiny Regulators with Great Potential," *Cell* (2001) 107: 823-826.
- Antopolsky, M. et al., "Peptide-Oligonucleotide Phosphorothioate Conjugates with Membrane Translocation and Nuclear Localization Properties," *Bioconjugate Chem.* (1999) 10(4):598-606.
- Arar, K. et al., "Synthesis and Antiviral Activity of Peptide-Oligonucleotide Conjugates Prepared by Using Na-(Bromoacetyl)peptides," *Bioconjugate Chem.* (1995) 6(5):573-577.
- Arnott, S., et al., "Optimised parameters for A-DNA and B-DNA," *Biochem. & Biophys. Res. Comm.*, 1972, 47(6), 1504-1510.
- Asseline, U. et al., "Nucleic acid-binding molecules with high affinity and base sequence specificity: Intercalating agents covalently linked to oligodeoxynucleotides," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci USA* (1984) 81: 3297-3301.
- Astriab-Fisher et al., "Conjugates of antisense oligonucleotides with the TAT and antennapedia cell-penetrating peptides: effects on cellular uptake, binding to target sequences and biologic actions," *Pharmaceutical Research* (2002) 19(6): 744-754.
- Astriab-Fisher, A. et al., "Antisense Inhibition of P-glycoprotein Expression Using Peptide-Oligonucleotide Conjugates," *Biochem. Pharmacol.* (2000) 60, 83-90.
- Baker, B. F. et al., "Oligonucleotide-europium complex conjugate designed to cleave the 5' cap structure of the ICAM-I transcript potentiates antisense activity in cells," *Nucleic Acids Res.* (1999) 27(6):1547-1551.
- Baker, B.F., et al., "2'-O-(2-methoxy)ethyl-modified anti-intercellular adhesion molecule 1 (ICAM-1) oligonucleotides selectively increase the ICAM-I mRNA level and inhibit formation of the ICAM-1 translation initiation complex in human umbilical vein endothelial cells," *J. Biol. Chem.*, 1997, 272(18), 11944-12000.
- Bartel, B. et al., "MicroRNAs: At the Root of Plant Development," *Plant Physiol.* (2003) 132, 709-717.
- Bass, B.L., "Double-stranded RNA as a template for gene silencing," *Cell*, 2000, 101, 235-238.
- Bayer, E. et al., "A New Support for Polypeptide Synthesis in Columns," *Tetrahedron Letters*, 1970, 51, 4503-4505.
- Beaucage et al. "The Functionalization of Oligonucleotides Via Phosphoramidite Derivatives", (1993) *Tetrahedron* 49(10):1925-1963.
- Beaucage, S.L. et al., "Deoxynucleoside Phosphoramidites-A New Class of Key Intermediates for Deoxypolynucleotide Synthesis," *Tetrahedron Letts.*, 1981, 22, 1859-1862.
- Biggadike, et al., "Short convergent route to homochiral carbocyclic 2'-deoxynucleosides and carbocyclic ribonucleosides", *J. Chem. Soc. Chem. Commun.* 1987, 1083-1084.
- Bollig, F. et al., "Affinity purification of ARE-binding proteins identifies poly(A)-binding protein 1 as a potential substrate in MK2-induced mRNA stabilization," *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* (2003) 301: 665-670.
- Bongartz, J.-P. et al., "Improved biological activity of antisense oligonucleotides conjugated to a fusogenic peptide," *Nucleic Acids Res.* (1994) 22(22):4681-4688.
- Bonora, G. M. et al., "Antisense activity of an anti-Hiv oligonucleotide conjugated to linear and branched high molecular weight polyethylene glycols," *Farmaco* (1998) 53:634-637.
- Bonora, G. M. et al., "Biological Properties of Antisense Oligonucleotides Conjugated to - Different High-Molecular Mass Poly(Ethylene Glycols)," *Nucleosides Nucleotides* (1999) 18(6 & 7):1723-1725.
- Bonora, G.M., et al., "A liquid-phase process suitable for large-scale synthesis of phosphorothioate oligonucleotides," *Organic Process Res. & Develop.*, 2000, 225-231.
- Borer, et al., "Stability of ribonucleic acid double-stranded helices," *J. Mol. Biol.*, 1974, 86, 843-853.
- Braasch et al., "Antisense inhibition of gene expression in cells by oligonucleotides incorporating locked nucleic acids: effect of mRNA target sequence and chimera design," *Nucleic Acids Research*, 2002, 30, 5160-5167.
- Braasch, D.A. et al., "Locked nucleic acid (LNA): fine-tuning the recognition of DNA and RNA," *Chem Biol*, 2001, 8, 1-7.
- Braasch, D.A. et al., "RNA Interference in Mammalian Cells by Chemically-Modified RNA," *Biochemistry*, 2003, 42, 7967-7975.
- Braasch, D.A., et al., "Novel antisense and peptide nucleic acid strategies for controlling gene expression," *Biochemistry*, Apr. 9, 2002, 41(14), 4503-4510.
- Branda et al., "Amplification of antibody production by phosphorothioate oligodeoxynucleotides," *J. Lab. Clin. Med.*, 1996, 128, 329-338.
- Branden, L. J. et al., "A peptide nucleic acid-nuclear localization signal fusion that mediates nuclear transport of DNA," *Nature Biotech* (1999) 17:784-787.
- Brantl, S., "Antisense-RNA regulation and RNA interference," *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*, 2002, 1575, 15-25.
- Brazma, A., et al., "Gene expression data analysis," *FEBS Lett.*, 2000, 480, 17-24.
- Brill, et al., "Synthesis of Oligodeoxynucleoside Phosphorodithioates Via Thioamidites", *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1989, 111, 2321-2322.
- Brown-Driver et al., "Inhibition of Translation of Hepatitis C Virus RNA by 2'-Modified Antisense Oligonucleotides," *Antisense Nucleic Acid Drug Dev.* (1999) 9(2): 145-154.
- Buhr, C.A. et al., "Oligodeoxynucleotides containing C-7 propylene analogs of 7-deaza-2'-deoxyguanosine and 7-deaza-2'-deoxyadenosine," *Nucleic Acids Research*, 1996, 24(15), 2974-2980.

- Butke, et al., "Facile synthesis of 2' amino-2-deoxynucleoside from the corresponding arabino derivative," *Nucleic Acid Chemistry*, 1986, Part Three, 149-152.
- Butler, M. et al., "Specific Inhibition of PTEN Expression Reverses Hyperglycemia in Diabetic Mice," *Diabetes*, 2002, 51, 1028-1034.
- Caplen et al., "dsRNA-mediated gene silencing in cultured *Drosophila* cells: a tissue culture model for the analysis of RNA interference," *GENE* (2000) 252: 95-105.
- Caplen, N.J., et al., "Specific inhibition of gene expression by small double-stranded RNAs in invertebrate and vertebrate systems," *PNAS*, 2001, 98(17), 9742-9747.
- Carmell, M.A. et al., "The argonaute family: tentacles that reach into RNAi, developmental control, stem cell maintenance, and tumorigenesis," *Genes and Development*, 2002, 16, 2733-2742.
- Carulli, J.P., et al., "High throughput analysis of differential gene expression," *J. Cellular Biochem. Suppl.*, 1998, 30(31), 286-296.
- Caruthers, M., "Synthesis of Oligonucleotides and Oligonucleotide Analogues", in "Oligonucleotides. Antisense Inhibitors of Gene Expression.", J.S. Cohen, Ed., CRC Press, Inc., 7-24, (1989).
- Castle, et al., "Imidazo[4, 5-D]pyridazines. I. Synthesis of 4,7-disubstituted derivatives", *Journal of Organic Chemistry*, 1958, 23, 1534-1538.
- Cazalla, D. et al., "Nuclear Export and Retention Signals in the RS Domain of SR Proteins," *Mol. Cell. Biol.* (2002) 22(19):6871-6882.
- Cazenave, C. et al., "Enzymatic amplification of translation inhibition of rabbit  $\beta$ -globin mRNA mediated by anti-messenger oligodeoxynucleotides covalently linked to intercalating agents", *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1987, 15, 4717-4736.
- Celis, J.E., et al., "Gene expression profiling: monitoring transcription and translation production using DNA microarrays and proteomics," *FEBS Lett.*, 2000, 480, 2-16.
- Cerutti, H., "RNA interference: traveling in the cell and gaining functions?" *Trends in Genetics* (2003) 19(1): 39-46.
- Chaloin, L. et al., "Design of Carrier Peptide-Oligonucleotide Conjugates with Rapid Membrane Translocation and Nuclear Localization Properties," *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* (1998) 243:601-608.
- Chaput, J.C., et al., "DNA polymerase-mediated DNA synthesis on a TNA template," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 2003, 125, 856-857.
- Chen and Wu, "Studies on Fluoroalkylation and Fluoroalkoxylation. Part 33. Direct Trifluoromethylation of Aryl Halides with Fluorosulphonyldifluoromethyl Iodide in the Presence of Copper: an Electron Transfer Induced Process," *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Transactions*, 1989, 1, 2385-2387.
- Chiang et al., "Antisense Oligonucleotides Inhibit Intercellular Adhesion Molecule 1 Expression by Two Distinct Mechanisms," *J. Biol. Chem.*, 1991, 266, 18162-18171.
- Chirila, T.V. et al., "The use of synthetic polymers for delivery of therapeutic antisense oligodeoxynucleotides," *Biomaterials*, vol. 23(2), pp. 321-342 (2002).
- Chiu et al., "siRNA function in RNAi: a chemical modification analysis," *RNA*, 2003, 9, 1034-1048.
- Chiu, Y.-L. et al., "RNAi in human cells: basic structural and functional features of small interfering RNA," *Molecular Cell*, Sep. 2002, 10, 549-561.
- Chladek, et al., "Facile Synthesis of 2' Amino-2-Deoxyadenosine," *J. Carbohydrates, Nucleosides & Nucleotides*, 1980, 7, 63-75.
- Choung, S. et al., "Chemical modification of siRNAs to improve serum stability without loss of efficacy," *Biochemical and Biophysical Research Communications*, 2006, 342, 919-927.
- Christofferson et al., "Ribozymes as human therapeutic agents", *J. Med. Chem.*, 1995, 38(12), 2023-2037.
- Chun-Nam Lok et al., "Potent gene-specific inhibitory properties of mixed backbone antisense oligonucleotides comprised of 2'-deoxy-2'-fluoro-D-arabinose and 2'-deoxyribose nucleotides," *Biochemistry*, 2002, 41, 3457-3467.
- Cogoni, C. et al., "Post-transcriptional gene silencing across kingdoms," *Curr. Opin. Genet. Dev.*, 2000, 10(6), 638-643.
- Cohen, G. L. et al., "Sequence Dependent Binding of cis-Dichlorodiammineplatinum(II) to DNA," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* (1980) 102(7), 2487-2488.
- Constant et al., "Heterodimeric Molecules Including Nucleic Acid Bases and 9-Aminoacridine Spectroscopic Studies, Conformations, and Interactions with DNA", *Biochemistry*, 1988, 27, 3997-4003.
- Conte, M.R., et al., "Conformational properties and thermodynamics of the RNA duplex r(CGCAAUUUGCG)<sub>2</sub>: comparison with the DNA analogue d(CGCAAATTTGCG)<sub>2</sub>," *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 1997, 25(13), 2627-2634.
- PCT International Search Report dated Jan. 24, 2005 (PCTUS03/35087).
- The PCT International Search Report dated Aug. 13, 2004 (PCT/US03/35072).
- The PCT International Search Report dated Aug. 2, 2004 (PCT/US03/35068).
- The PCT International Search Report dated Aug. 23, 2004 (PCT/US03/35063).
- The PCT International Search Report dated Dec. 1, 2003 (PCT/US03/19043).
- Corey, D. R. et al., "Generation of a Hybrid Sequence-Specific Single-Stranded Deoxyribonuclease," *Science* (1987) 238:1401-1403.
- Corey, D. R. et al., "Sequence-Selective Hydrolysis of Duplex DNA by an Oligonucleotide-Directed Nuclease," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* (1989) 111(22):8523-8525.
- Corey, D. R., "48000-fold Acceleration of Hybridization by Chemically Modified Oligonucleotides," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* (1995) 117(36):9373-9374.
- Cornell, W. D. et al., "A Second Generation Force Field for the Simulation of Proteins, Nucleic Acids, and Organic Molecules," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1995, 117, 5179-5197.
- Cossum, P.A. et al., "Disposition of the <sup>14</sup>C-Labeled Phosphorothioate Oligonucleotide ISIS 2105 after Intravenous Administration to Rats," *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.*, 1993, 267(3), 1181-1190.
- Couzin, J., "Small TNAs Make Big Splash," *Science* (2002) 298: 2296-2297.
- Crawford, J.M., "Role of Vesicle-Mediated Transport Pathways in Hepatocellular Bile Secretion," *Semin. Liver Dis.*, 1996, 16(2), 169-189.
- Crooke, S.T., *Antisense Research & Application*, Chapter 1, pp. 1-50, Publ. Springer-Verlag, Ed. S.T. Crooke (1998).
- Cummins, L.L. et al., "Characterization of fully 2'-modified oligoribonucleotide hetero- and homoduplex hybridization and nuclease sensitivity," *Nucleic Acids Research*, 1995, 23(11), 2019-2024.
- Czauderna, F., et al., "Structural variations and stabilizing modifications of synthetic siRNAs in mammalian cells," *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 2003, 31(11), 2705-2716.
- Dahl, B.H. et al., "A Highly Reactive, Odourless Substitute for Thiphenol/Triethylamine as a Deprotection Reagent in the Synthesis of Oligonucleotides and their Analogues," *Acta Chem. Scand.*, 1990, 44, 639-641.
- Damha, et al., "Solution and solid phase chemical synthesis of arabinonucleotides", *Can J. Chem.*, 1989, 831-839.
- Dande, P. et al., Abstract From The 227th ACS National Meeting, Anaheim, CA, Mar. 28-Apr. 1, 2004.
- De las Heras, et al., "3'-C-Cyano-3'-Deoxythymidine," *Tetrahedron Letters*, 1988, 29, 941-944.
- Dellinger, D.J. et al., "Solid-Phase Chemical Synthesis of Phosphonoacetate and Thiophosphonoacetate Oligodeoxynucleotides," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 2003, 125(4), 940-950.
- Denny, W.A., "DNA-intercalating ligands as anti-cancer drugs: prospects for future design," *Anti-Cancer Drug Design*, 1989, 4, 241-263.
- Dignam, et al., "Accurate transcription initiation by RNA polymerase II in a soluble extract from isolated mammalian nuclei," *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 1983, 11, 1475-1489.
- Divakar, et al., "Approaches to the Synthesis of 2'-Thio Analogues of Pyrimidine Ribosides", *J. Chem. Soc., Perkins Trans.*, I, 1990, 969-974.
- Divakar, et al., "Reaction Between 2,2'-Anhydro-1- $\beta$ -D-arabinofuranosyluracil and Thiolate Ions", *J. Chem. Soc., Perkins Trans. I*, 1982, 1625-1628.
- Dreyer, et al., "Sequence-specific cleavage of single-stranded DNA: Oligodeoxynucleotide-EDTA-Fe(II)", *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 1985, 82, 968-972.

- Duff, R. J. et al., "[17] Intrabody Tissue-Specific Delivery of Antisense Conjugates in Animals: Ligand-Linker-Antisense Oligomer Conjugates," *Methods Enzymol.* (2000) 313:297-321.
- Eckstein, et al., "Polynucleotides Containing 2'-Chloro-2'-Deoxyribose", *Biochemistry*, 1972, 11, 4336-4344.
- Eddy, S.R., "Non-Coding RNA Genes and the Modern RNA World," *Nature Rev. Genetics* (2001) 2: 919-929.
- Efimov, V. A. et al., "Synthesis of Polyethylene Glycol - Oligonucleotide Conjugates," *Bioorg. Khim.* (1993) 19(8):800-804.
- Egli, M. et al., "RNA Hydration: A Detailed Look," *Biochemistry*, 1996, 35, 8489-8494.
- Elayadi, A.N. et al., "Application of PNA and LNA oligomers to chemotherapy," *Curr. Opin. Investig. Drugs*, 2001, 2(4), 558-561.
- Elbashir S.M., "Duplexes of 21-nucleotide RNAs mediate RNA interference in cultured mammalian cells," *Nature*, 2001, 411, 494-498.
- Elbashir, S.M., "RNA interference is mediated by 21- and 22-nucleotide RNAs," *Genes & Devel.*, 2001, 15, 188-200.
- Elmén, J. et al., "Locked nucleic acid (LNA) mediated improvements in siRNA stability and functionality," *Nucleic Acids Res.* 2005, 33(1), 439-447.
- EP Supplementary Search Report for EP 03716922 dated May 12, 2006.
- Faria, M. et al., "Phosphoramidate oligonucleotides as potent antisense molecules in cells and in vivo," *Nature Biotech.*, 2001, 19, 40-44.
- Fazakerley, G.V., et al., "A→Z transition in the synthetic hexanucleotide (dCdGf)3," *FEBS*, 1985, 182(2), 365-369.
- Fedoroff, O.Y. et al., "Structure of a DNA:RNA Hybrid Duplex," *J. Mol. Biol.*, 1993, 233, 509-523.
- Fire et al., "RNA-triggered gene silencing," *TIG* (1999) 15(9): 358-363.
- Fire et al., *Nature*, 1998, 391, 806-811.
- Firestone, R. A., "Low-Density Lipoprotein as a Vehicle for Targeting Antitumor Compounds to Cancer Cells," *Bioconjugate Chem.* (1994) 105-113.
- Flanagan, W. M. et al., "A cytosine analog that confers enhanced potency to antisense oligonucleotides," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, Mar. 1999, 96, 3513-3518.
- Flanagan, W.M. et al., "Cellular penetration and antisense activity by a phenoxazine-substituted heptanucleotide," *Nature Biotechnol.* (1999) 17(1): 48-52.
- Fluiter, K. et al., "In vivo tumor growth inhibition and biodistribution studies of locked nucleic acids (LNA) antisense oligonucleotides," *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 2003, 31(3), 953-962.
- Fox, et al., "Nucleosides. XVIII. Synthesis of 2'-Fluorothymidine, 2'-Fluorodeoxyuridine, and Other 2'-Halogeno-2'-Deoxy Nucleosides 12", *J. Org. Chem.*, 1964, 29, 558-564.
- Francis, A.W. et al., "Probing the Requirements for Recognition and Catalysis in Fpg and MutY with Nonpolar Adenine Isosteres," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* (2003) 125(52): 16235-16242.
- Fraser, A., et al., "Synthesis and conformational properties of 2'-deoxy-2'-methylthiopyrimidine and -purine nucleosides: potential antisense applications," *J. Heterocycl. Chem.*, 1993, 30, 1277-1287.
- Fraser, A.G. et al., "Functional genomic analysis of *C. elegans* chromosome 1 by systemic RNA interference," *Nature*, 2000, 408, 325-330.
- Freier, S. M. et al., "The ups and downs of nucleic acid duplex stability: structure—stability studies on chemically-modified DNA:RNA duplexes," *Nucleic Acids Research*, 1997, 25(22), 4429-4443.
- Freskos, "Synthesis of 2'-Deoxypyrimidine Nucleosides Via Copper (I) Iodine Catalysis," *Nucleosides & Nucleotides*, 1989, 8, 1075, 1076.
- Frieden, M. et al., "Expanding the design horizon of antisense oligonucleotides with alpha-L-LNA," *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 2003, 31(21), 6365-6372.
- Fromageot, H.P.M. et al., "The Synthesis of Oligonucleotides," *Tetrahedron*, 1967, 23, 2315-2331.
- Fuchs, B. et al., "Identification of Differentially Expressed Genes by Mutually Subtracted RNA Fingerprinting," *Anal. Biochem.*, 2000, 286, 91-98.
- Gaffney, et al., "A New Strategy for the Protection of eoxyguanosine During Oligonucleotide Synthesis," *Tetrahedron Letters*, 1982, 23, 2257-2260.
- Gait, M.J. et al., "Application of chemically synthesized RNA," *RNA: Protein Interactions* (1998) Smith (ed.), pp. 1-36.
- Gait, M.J., *Oligoribonucleotides, Antisense Research and Applications*, 1993, Crooke, S.T. And Lebleu, B. (eds.), CRC Press, Boca Raton, pp. 289-301.
- Gallo, M. et al., "2'-C-Methyluridine phosphoramidite: a new building block for the preparation of RNA analogues carrying the 2'-hydroxyl group," *Tetrahedron*, 2001, 57(27), 5707-5713.
- Gao, J. et al., "Expanded-Size Bases in Naturally Sized DNA: Evaluation of Steric Effects in Watson-Crick Pairing," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* (2004) 126(38): 11826-11831.
- Geary, R.S. et al., "Pharmacokinetic Properties of 2'-O-(2-Methoxyethyl)-Modified Oligonucleotide Analogs in Rats," *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Therap.*, 1998, 296(3), 890-897.
- Going, J.J., et al., "Molecular pathology and future developments," *Eur. J. Cancer*, 1999, 35(14), 1895-1904.
- Gonzalez, C. et al., "Structure and Dynamics of a DNA-RNA Hybrid Duplex with a Chiral Phosphorothioate Moiety: NMR and Molecular Dynamics with Conventional and Time-Averaged Restraints," *Biochemistry*, 1995, 34, 4969-4982.
- Gorlach, M. et al., "The mRNA Poly(a)-Binding Protein: Localization, Abundance, and RNABinding Specificity," *Exp. Cells Res.* (1994) 211:400-407.
- Graham, et al., "Tritium Labeling of Antisense Oligonucleotides by Exchange with Tritiated Water," *Nucleic Acids. Res.*, 1993, 16, 3737-3743.
- Graham, M.J. et al., "In Vivo Distribution and Metabolism of a Phosphorothioate Oligonucleotide within Rat Liver after Intravenous Administration," *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Therap.*, 1998, 286(1), 447-458.
- Gravert, D.J., et al., "Organic synthesis on soluble polymer supports," *J. Chem. Rev.*, 1997, 97, 489-509.
- Griffey, R.H. et al., "2'-O-Aminopropyl Ribonucleotides: A Zwitterionic Modification that Enhances the Exonuclease Resistance and Biological Activity of Antisense Oligonucleotides," *J. Med. Chem.*, 1996, 39(26), 5100-5109.
- Griffin, B.E. et al., "The Synthesis of Oligoribonucleotides," *Tetrahedron*, 1967, 23, 2301-2313.
- Grishok, A. et al., "Genetic Requirements for Inheritance of RNAi in *C. elegans*," *Science*, 2000, 287, 2494-2497.
- Grünweller, A. et al., "Comparison of different antisense strategies in mammalian cells using locked nucleic acids, 2'-O-methyl RNA, phosphorothioates and small interfering RNA," *Nucleic Acids Research*, 2003, 31(12), 3185-3193.
- Gryaznov, S. et al., "Oligodeoxynucleotide N3'P5' Phosphoramidates: Synthesis and Hybridization Properties," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1994, 116(7), 3143-3144.
- Guckian, K.M. et al., "Structure and Base Pairing Properties of a Replicable Nonpolar Isostere for Deoxyadenosine," *J. Org. Chem.* (1998) 63(26):9652-9656.
- Guillerm, D. et al., "Synthesis of 4'-fluoroadenosine as an inhibitor of S-adenosyl-L-homocysteine hydrolase," *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters*, 1995, 5(14), 1455-1460.
- Guo, S. et al., "par-1, a Gene Required for Establishing Polarity in *C. elegans* Embryos, Encodes a Putative Ser/Thr Kinase That is Asymmetrically Distributed," *Cell*, 1995, 81(4), 611-620.
- Gura, T., "A silence that speaks volumes," *Nature*, 2000, 404, 804-808.
- Guschlbauer, et al., "Nucleoside conformation is Determined by the Electronegativity of the Sugar Substituent," *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 1980, 8, 1421-1433.
- Guschlbauer, W. et al., "Poly-2'-deoxy-2'-fluoro-cytidylic acid: enzymatic synthesis, spectroscopic characterization and interaction with poly-inosinic acid," *Nucleic Acid Research*, 1977, 4(6), 1933-1943.
- Guschlbauer, W., et al., "Use of 2'-deoxy-2'-fluoro-nucleosides in the study of polynucleotide conformation: a progress report," *Nucleic Acid Research Symposium Series*, 1982, 11, 113-116.
- Gutiérrez, A.J. et al., "Antisense Gene Inhibition by C-5 Substituted Deoxyuridine-Containing Oligodeoxynucleotides," *Biochemistry*, 1997, 36(4), 743-748.



- Kabanov, A.V., "A new class of antivirals: antisense oligonucleotides combined with a hydrophobic substituent effectively inhibit influenza virus reproduction and synthesis of virus-specific proteins in MDCK cells", *FEBS Letts.*, 1990, 259, 327-330.
- Kawasaki, H/ et al., "Hes1 is a target of MicroRNA-23 during retinoic-acid-induced neuronal differentiation of NT2 cells," *Nature* (2003) 423: 838-842.
- Khurshid et al., "The unique conformational stability of poly 2'-O-Ethyladenylic Acid," *FEBS Letters*, 1972, 28(1), 25.
- Khvorova, A. et al., "Functional siRNAs Exhibit Strand Bias," *Cell*, 2003, 115(2), 209-216.
- Kiaris, H. et al., "Antagonists of Growth Hormone-Releasing Hormone Inhibit the Growth of U-87MG Human Glioblastoma in Nude mice," *Neoplasia*, 2000, 2(3), 242-250.
- Kielanowska et al., "Preparation and properties of poly 2'-O-ethylcytidylic acid," *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1976, 3(3), 817-824.
- Kingston, R.E. et al., "Calcium Phosphate Transfection", *Current Protocols in Neuroscience*, 1997, Supplement 1, A.1C.1—A.1C.8.
- Klopffer, A.E. et al., "Synthesis of 2'-Aminoalkyl-Substituted Fluorinated Nucleobases and Their Influence on the Kinetic Properties of Hammerhead Ribozymes," *ChemBioChem* (2004) 5: 707-716.
- Klopffer, A.E. et al., "The effect of universal fluorinated nucleobases on the catalytic activity of ribozymes," *Nucleosides Nucleotides Nucleic Acids* (2003) 22(5-8): 1347-1350.
- Knorre, et al., "Complementary-Addressed Sequence-Specific Modification of Nucleic Acids", *Progress in Nucleic Acid Research and Molecular Biology* 1985, 32, 291-321.
- Koole, et al., "Synthesis of phosphate-methylated DNA fragments using 9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl as transient base protecting group", *J. Org. Chem.*, 1989, 54, 1657-1664.
- Koshkin, A.A., et al., "LNA (locked nucleic acid): an RNA mimic forming exceedingly stable LNA:LNA duplexes," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1998, 120, 13252-13253.
- Koshkin, A.A., et al., "LNA (locked nucleic acids): synthesis of the adenine, cytosine, guanine, 5-methylcytosine, thymine and uracil bicyclonucleoside monomers, oligomerisation, and unprecedented nucleic acid recognition," *Tetrahedron*, 1998, 54, 3607-3630.
- Kraynack, B.A. et al., "Small interfering RNAs containing full 2'-O-methylribonucleotide-modified sense strands display Argonaute2/eIF2C2-dependent activity," *RNA*, 2006, 12, 163-176.
- Krieg, A. M. et al., "Uptake of Oligodeoxyribonucleotides by Lymphoid Cells Is Heterogeneous and Inducible," *Antisense Research and Development* (1991) 1:161-171.
- Kroschwitz, J.I. (Ed.), *The Concise Encyclopedia of Polymer Science and Engineering*, John Wiley & Sons, 1990, 858-859.
- Krug, A., et al., "Synthesis of oligonucleotide probes containing 2'-deoxy-2'-fluoronucleosides for cleavage of RNA by RNase H," *Biomed. Biochem. Acta*, 1990, 49, 161-166.
- Krug, A., et al., "The behaviour of 2'-deoxy-2'-fluorouridine incorporated into oligonucleotides by the phosphoramidite approach," *Nucleosides & Nucleotides*, 1989, 8(8), 1473-1483.
- Kuijpers, W. H. A. et al., "Specific Recognition of Antibody-Oligonucleotide Conjugates by Radiolabeled Antisense Nucleotides: A Novel Approach for Two-Step Radioimmunotherapy of Cancer," *Bioconjugate Chem.* (1993) 4(1):94-102.
- Kumar, R., et al., "The first analogues of LNA (locked nucleic acids): phosphorothioate-LNA and 2'-thio-LNA," *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1998, 8, 2219-2222.
- Kurchavov, N.A., et al., "A new phosphoramidite reagent for the incorporation of diazaphenoxazinone nucleoside with enhanced base-pairing properties into oligodeoxynucleotides," *Nucleosides and Nucleotides*, 1997, 16, 1837-1846.
- Kurreck, J., "Antisense technologies, Improvement through novel chemical modifications," *Eur. J. Biochem.*, 2003, 270(8), 1628-1644.
- Kusmierk et al., "Alkylation of cytidine-5'-phosphate: Mechanisms of alkylation, influence of O' -alkylation on susceptibility of pyrimidine nucleotides to some nucleolytic enzymes, and synthesis of 2'-O-alkyl polynucleotides," *ACTA Biochim. Polonica*, 1973, 20(4), 365-381.
- Lacerra, G., et al., "Restoration of hemoglobin synthesis in erythroid cells from peripheral blood of thalassemic patients," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, Aug. 15, 2000, 97(17), 9591- 9596.
- Lai J. S. et al., "Fluorinated DNA Bases as Probes of Electrostatic Effects in DNA Base Stacking," *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed.* (2003) 42: 5973-5977.
- Lai, J. S. et al., "Selective Pairing of Polyfluorinated DNA Bases," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* (2004) 126(10): 3040-3041.
- Lane, A. N. et al., "NMR Assignments and Solution Conformation of the DNA-RNA Hybrid Duplex d(GTGAACCT)-r(AAGUUCAC)," *Eur. J. Biochem.*, 1993, 215, 297-306.
- Larson, E.J., et al., "Rapid DNA fingerprinting of pathogens by flow cytometry," *Cytometry*, 2000, 41, 203-208.
- Larsson, M., et al., "High-throughput protein expression of cDNA products as a tool in functional genomics," *J. Biotechnol.*, 2000, 80, 143-157.
- Le Doan et al., "Sequence-Targeted Chemical Modifications of Nucleic Acids by Complementary Oligonucleotides Covalently Linked to Porphyrins", *Nucleic Acid Research*, 1987, 15, 8643-8659.
- Lee et al., *Cell*, 1993, 75, 843-854.
- Lee, K. et al., "Ring-Constrained (N)-Methanocarba Nucleosides as Adenosine Receptor Agonists: Independent 5'-Uronamide and 2'-Deoxy Modifications," *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters*, 2001, 11(10), 1333-1337.
- Lee, Y. et al., "MicroRNA maturation: stepwise processing and subcellular localization," *EMBO J.* (2002) 21(17): 4663-4670.
- Lee, Y. et al., "The nuclear RNase III Drosha initiates microRNA processing," *Nature* (2003) 425: 415-419.
- Leeds, J.M. et al., "Pharmacokinetic Properties of Phosphorothioate Oligonucleotides," *Nucleosides Nucleotides*, 1997, 16(7-9), 1689-1693.
- Letsinger et al., "Effects of Pendant Groups at Phosphorus on Binding Properties of D-ApA Analogues", *Nucleic Acids Research*, 1986, 14, 3487-3499.
- Letsinger, R.L. et al., Cholesteryl-conjugated oligonucleotides: Synthesis, properties and activity as inhibitors of replication of human immunodeficiency virus in cell culture, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.*, 1989, 86, 6553-6556.
- Lewis, D.L. et al., "Efficient delivery of siRNA for inhibition of gene expression in postnatal mice," *Nature Genetics*, 2002, 32, 107-108.
- Li, S. et al., "Folate-Mediated Targeting of Antisense Oligodeoxynucleotides to Ovarian Cancer Cells," *Pharm. Res.* (1998) 15(10):1540-1545.
- Liao, "A pyrimidine-guanine sequence-specific ribonuclease from *Rana catesbeiana* (bullfrog) oocytes", *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1992, 20, 1371-1377.
- Lima, W.F. et al., "Highly efficient endonucleolytic cleavage of RNA by a Cys2His2 zinc-finger peptide," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* (1999) 96:10010-10015.
- Lima, W.F. et al., "Binding affinity and specificity of *Escherichia coli* RNase H1: impact on the kinetics of catalysis of antisense oligonucleotide-RNA hybrids," *Biochemistry*, vol. 36, pp. 390-398 (1997).
- Limbach, P.A. et al., "Summary: the modified nucleosides of RNA," *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 1994, 22(12), 2183-2196.
- Lin, K.-Y. et al., "A Cytosine Analogue Capable of Clamp-Like Binding to a Guanine in Helical Nucleic Acids," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1998, 120(33), 8531-8532.
- Lin, K.-Y. et al., "Tricyclic 2'-Deoxycytidine Analogs: Synthesis and Incorporation into Oligodeoxynucleotides Which Have Enhanced Binding to Complementary RNA," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1995, 117, 3873-3874.
- Lin, M. et al., "Inhibition of collagenase type I expression by psoralen antisense oligonucleotides in dermal fibroblasts," *Faseb J.* (1995), 9, 1371-1377.
- Lipardi, C., et al., "RNAi as random degradative PCR: siRNA primers convert mRNA into dsRNAs that are degraded to generate new siRNAs," *Cell*, 2001, 107, 297-307.
- Liu, H. et al. "A Four Base Paired Genetic Helix with Expanded Size," *Science* (2003) 302: 868-871.
- Liu, H. et al., "Toward a New Genetic System with Expanded Dimensions: Size-Expanded Analogues of Deoxyadenosine and Thymidine," *J. Am Chem Soc.* (2004) 126(4) 1102-1109.
- Liu, K. et al., "Efficient Nuclear Delivery of Antisense Oligodeoxynucleotides and Selective Inhibition of C/EBP Expression

- by Apo E Peptide in a Human CETP-Stably Transfected CHO Cell Line," *Arterioscler. Thromb. Vasc. Biol.* (1999) 19:2207-2213.
- Lixin, R. et al., "Novel Properties of the Nucleolar Targeting Signal of Human Angiogenin," *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Comm.* (2001) 284:185-193.
- Loakes, D. et al., "The applications of universal DNA base analogues," *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 2001, 29(12), 2437-2447.
- Lukhtanov, E. A. et al., "Direct, Solid Phase Assembly of Dihydropyrroloindole Peptides with Conjugated Oligonucleotides," *Bioconjugate Chem.* (1996) 7(5):564-567.
- Madden, S.L., et al., "Serial analysis of gene expression: from gene discovery to target identification," *Drug Discov. Today*, Sep. 2000, 5(9), 415-425.
- Mahato et al., "Modulation of gene expression by antisense and antigene oligodeoxynucleotides and small interfering RNA," *Expert Opinion on Drug Delivery*, Jan. 2005, 2(1), 3-28.
- Manche et al., "Interactions between double-stranded RNA regulators and the protein kinase DAI," *Mol. Cell Biol.*, 1992, 12(11), 5238-5248.
- Manoharan, M., "RNA interference and chemically modified small interfering RNAs," *Current Opinion in Chemical Biology*, 2004, 8, 570-579.
- Manoharan M. et al., "Cholic Acid-Oligonucleotide Conjugates for Antisense Applications", *Bioorganic Med. Chem. Letts.*, 1994, 4, 1053-1060.
- Manoharan M. et al., "Oligonucleotide Conjugates: Alteration of the Pharmacokinetic Properties of Antisense Agents", *Nucleosides and Nucleotides*, 1995, 14, 969-973.
- Manoharan, M. et al., "Chemical Modifications to Improve Uptake and Bioavailability of Antisense Oligonucleotides", *Annals NY Acad. Sciences*, 1992, 660, 306-309.
- Manoharan, M. et al., "Introduction of a Lipophilic Thioether Tether in the Minor Groove of Nucleic Acids for Antisense Applications," *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Letts.*, 1993, 3, 2765-2770.
- Manoharan, M. et al., "Novel Functionalization of the Sugar Moiety of Nucleic Acids for Multiple Labeling in the Minor Groove," *Tetrahedron Letters* (1991) 32(49):7171-7174.
- Manoharan, M. et al., "Lipidic Nucleic Acids", *Tetrahedron Letts.*, 1995, 36, 3651-3654.
- Manoharan, M., "2'-Carbohydrate modifications in antisense oligonucleotide therapy: importance of conformation, configuration and conjugation," *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*, 1999, 1489, 117-130.
- Manoharan, M., "Designer Antisense Oligonucleotides: Conjugation Chemistry and Functionality Placement," *Antisense Research and Applications*, Crooke and Lebleu, eds., CRC Press Boca Raton, FL, 1993, Chapter 17, 303-349.
- Manoharan, M., "Oligonucleotide Conjugates as Potential Antisense Drugs with Improved Uptake, Biodistribution, Targeted Delivery and Mechanism of Action," *Antisense Nucleic Acid Drug Development* (2002) 12:103-128.
- Manoharan, M., "Oligonucleotide Conjugates in Antisense Technology," *Antisense Drug Technology, Principles, Strategies, and Applications*, Crooke, S. T. ed., Marcel Dekker, New York, (2001) Chapter 16, 391-467.
- Marcus-Sekura, "Comparative inhibition of chloramphenicol acetyltransferase gene expression by antisense oligonucleotide analogues having alkyl phosphotriester, methylphosphonate and phosphorothioate linkages", *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 1987, 15, 5749-5763.
- Marcus-Sekura, "Techniques for Using Antisense Oligodeoxyribonucleotides to Study Gene Expression", *Anal. Biochemistry*, 1988, 172, 289-295.
- Markiewicz, et al., "Simultaneous Protection of 3'- and 5'-Hydroxyl Groups of Nucleosides", *Nucleic Acid Chemistry, Part 3*, pp. 229-231, L.B. Townsend, et al., Eds., J. Wiley and Sons, New York, 1986, 229-231.
- Martinez, J., et al., "Single-stranded antisense siRNAs guide target RNA cleavage in RNAi," *Cell*, 2002, 110, 563-574.
- Maruenda, H. et al., "Antisense Sequence-Directed Cross-Linking of DNA Oligonucleotides by Mitomycin C," *Bioconjugate Chem.* (1996) 7(5):541-544.
- Maruenda, H. et al., "Antisense sequence-directed cross-linking of RNA oligonucleotides by mitomycin," *Anti-Cancer Drug. Des.* (1997) 12, 473-479.
- Marwick, C., "First "Antisense" Drug Will Treat CMV Retinitis," *J. Am. Med. Assoc.*, 1998, 280(10), 871.
- Matsukura, M. et al., "Phosphorothioate Analogs of Oligodeoxynucleotides: Inhibitors of Replication and Cytopathic Effects of Human Immunodeficiency Virus", *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 1987, 84, 7706-7710.
- Matteucci, M.D. et al., "Synthesis of Deoxyoligonucleotides on a Polymer Support," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1981, 103(11), 3185-3191.
- McCafferey, A.P. et al., "RNA interference in adult mice," *Nature*, 2002, 418, 38-39.
- McIntyre, K.W. et al., "A Sense Phosphorothioate Oligonucleotide Directed to the Initiation Codon of Transcription Factor NF- $\kappa$ B p65 Causes Sequence-Specific Immune Stimulation," *Antisense Res. Dev.*, 1993, 3, 309-322.
- McQueen, C.A. et al., "Effect of Nalidixic Acid on DNA Repair in Rat Hepatocytes," *Cell Biol. Toxicol.*, 1989, 5(2), 201-206.
- Mellitzer et al., "Spatial and temporal 'knock down' of gene expression by electroporation of double-stranded RNA and morpholinos into early postimplantation mouse embryos," *Mechanisms of Development*, 2002, 118(1-2), 57-63.
- Meunier, L. et al., "The nuclear export signal-dependent localization of oligonucleopeptides enhances the inhibition of the protein expression from a gene transcribed in cytosol," *Nucleic Acids Res.* 1999, 27(13):2730-2736.
- Meyer, et al., "Efficient, Specific Cross-Linking and Cleavage of DNA by Stable, Synthetic Complementary Oligodeoxynucleotides", *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1989, 111, 8517-8519.
- Mili, S. et al., "Distinct RNP Complexes of Shuttling hnRNP Proteins with Pre-mRNA and mRNA. Candidate Intermediates in Formation and Export of mRNA," *Mol. Cell Biol.* (2001) 21(21):7307-7319.
- Miller, et al., "A New Approach to Chemotherapy Based on Molecular Biology and Nucleic Acid Chemistry: Matagen (Masking Tape for Gene Expression)", *Anti-Cancer Drug Design*, 1987, 2, 117-128.
- Miller, et al., "Biochemical and Biological Effects of Nonionic Nucleic Acid Methylphosphonates", *Biochemistry* 1981, 20, 1874-1880.
- Miller, et al., "Nonionic nucleic acid analogues. Synthesis and characterization of dideoxyribonucleoside methylphosphonates", *Biochemistry* 1979, 18, 5134-5143.
- Miller, et al., "Synthesis and properties of adenine and thymine nucleoside alkyl phosphotriesters, the neutral analogs of dinucleoside monophosphates", *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1971, 93, 6657-6664.
- Min, K. -L. et al., "Oligonucleotides comprised of alternating 2'-deoxy-2' -fluoro-beta-D-arabinonucleosides and D-2'-deoxyribonucleosides (2'F-ANA/DNA 'Altimers') induce efficient RNA cleavage mediated by RNase H," *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters*, Sep. 2002, 12, 2651-2654.
- Mishra et al., "Improved leishmanicidal effect of phosphorothioate antisense oligonucleotides by LDL-mediated delivery", *Biochim. Biophys. Acta*, 1995, 1264, 229-237.
- Miura et al., "Fluorometric determination of total mRNA with oligo(dT) immobilized on microtiter plates", *Clin. Chem.*, 1996, 42(11), 1758-1764.
- Montgomery, M.K. et al., "RNA as a target of double-stranded RNA-mediated genetic interference in *Caenorhabditis elegans*," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 1998, 95(26), 15502-15507.
- Moran, S. et al., "A thymidine triphosphate shape analog lacking Watson-Crick pairing ability is replicated with high sequence selectivity," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* (1997) 94 10506-10511.
- Moran, S. et al., "Difluorotoluene, a Nonpolar Isostere for Thymine, Codes Specifically and Efficiently for Adenine in DNA Replication," *J Am Chem Soc.* (1997) 119(8), 2056-2057.
- Morita, K. et al., "2'-O,4'-C-Ethylene-Bridged Nucleic Acids (ENA): Highly Nuclease-Resistant and Thermodynamically Stable Oligonucleotides for Antisense Drug," *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters*, 2002, 12(1), 73-76.
- Morita, K. et al., "Synthesis and Properties of 2'-O,4'-C-Ethylene-Bridged Nucleic Acids (ENA) as Effective Antisense Oligonucleotides," *Bioorg. Med. Chem.*, 2003, 11, 2211-2226.

- Moulds, C. et al., "Site and Mechanism of Antisense Inhibition by C-5 Propyne Oligonucleotides," *Biochemistry*, 1995, 34(15), 5044-5053.
- Napoli, C. et al., "Introduction of a Chimeric Chalcone Synthase Gene into Petunia Results in Reversible Co-Suppression of Homologous Genes in trans," *Plant Cell*, 1990, 2(4), 279-289.
- Nasevicius, A. et al., "Effective targeted gene 'knockdown' in zebrafish," *Nature Genetics*, 2000, 26, 216-220.
- Nelson, P. S. et al., "Bifunctional oligonucleotide probes synthesized using a novel CPG support are able to detect single base pair mutations," *Nucleic Acids Res.* (1989) 17(18):7187-7194.
- Nestle, F.O. et al., "Cationic Lipid is not Required for Uptake and Selective Inhibitory Activity of ICAM-1 Phosphorothioate Antisense Oligonucleotides in Keratinocytes," *J. Invest. Dermatol.*, 1994, 103, 569-575.
- Nielsen et al., "Sequence-Selective Recognition of DNA by Strand Displacement with a Thymine-Substituted Polyamide," *Science*, 1991, 254, 1497-1500.
- Nishikura, K. et al., "A Short Primer on RNAi: RNA-Directed RNA Polymerase Acts as a Key Catalyst," *Cell*, 2001, 107(4), 415-418.
- Nykänen, A. et al., "ATP Requirements and Small Interfering RNA Structure in the RNA Interference Pathway," *Cell*, 2001, 107, 309-321.
- Oberhauser et al., "Effective incorporation of 2'-O-methyl-oligonucleotides into liposomes and enhanced cell association through modification with thiocholesterol," *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1992, 20(3), 533-538.
- Ogilvie, K.K. et al., "The Use of Silyl Groups in Protecting the Hydroxyl Functions of Ribonucleosides," *Tetrahedron Letters*, 1974, 15(33), 2861-2863.
- Olie, R.A. et al., "Analysis of ribosyl-modified, mixed backbone analogs of a bcl-2/bcl-xL antisense oligonucleotide," *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*, 1576 (2002), 101-109.
- Olsen, D.B., et al., "Study of a Hammerhead Ribozyme Containing 2'-Modified Adenosine Residues," *Biochemistry*, 1991, 30, 9735-9741.
- O'Neill, B.M. et al., "A Highly Effective Nonpolar Isostere of Deoxyguanosine: Synthesis, Structure, Stacking, and Base Pairing," *J. Org. Chem.* (2002) 67(17):5869-5875.
- Ørum, H. et al., "Locked nucleic acids: A promising molecular family for gene-function analysis and antisense drug development," *Curr. Opin. Mol. Therap.*, 2001, 3(3), 239-243.
- Outten, et al., "Synthetic 1-methoxybenzo[d]naphtho[1,2-b]pyran-6-one c-glycosides", *J. Org. Chem.* 1987, 52, 5064-5066.
- Owen, et al., "Transcriptional activation of a conserved sequence element by ras requires a nuclear factor distinct from c-fos or c-jun", *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci USA*, 1990, 87, 3866-3870.
- Owen, G.R. et al., "4'-Substituted Nucleosides. 3. Synthesis of Some 4'-Fluorouridine Derivatives," *J. Org. Chem.*, 1976, 41(18), 3010-3017.
- Paddison, P.J., et al., "Stable suppression of gene expression by RNAi in mammalian cells," *PNAS*, 2002, 99(3), 1443-1448.
- Parker, J.S. et al., "Structure insights into mRNA recognition from a PIWI domain-siRNA guide complex," *Nature*, 2005, 434, 663-666.
- Parkes, et al., "A short synthesis of 3'-cyano-3'-Deoxythymidine", *Tetra. Lett.*, 1988, 29, 2995-2996.
- Parr, W. et al., "Solid-Phase Peptide Synthesis on an Inorganic Matrix having Organic Groups on the Surface," *Angew Chem. Internat. Edit.*, 1972, 11 (4), 314-315.
- Patzel et al., "A Theoretical Approach to Select Effective Antisense Oligodeoxyribonucleotides at High Statistical Probability," *Nucleic Acids Research* (1999) pp. 4328-4334.
- Peracchi, A., "Prospects for antiviral ribozymes and deoxyribozymes," *Rev. Med. Virol.*, vol. 14, pp. 47-64 (2004).
- Petersen, M. et al., "The conformations of locked nucleic acids (LNA)," *J. Mol. Recognit.*, 2000, 13, 44-53.
- Petersheim, et al., "Base-Stacking and Base-Pairing contributions to helix stability: thermodynamics of double-helix formation with CCGG, CCGGP, CCGGAP, ACCGGP, CCGGUP, and ACCGGUP", *Biochemistry*, 1983, 22, 256-263.
- Pichon, C. et al., "Intracellular Routing and Inhibitory Activity of Oligonucleopeptides Containing a KDEL Motif," *Mol. Pharmacol.* (1997) 51:431-438.
- Pieken, W.A., et al., "Structure-Function Relationship of Hammerhead Ribozymes as Probed by 2' -Modifications," *Nucleic Acids Symp Ser.*, 1991, 24, 51-53.
- Pike et al., "Mixed Alkylation (Methylation and Ethylation) of Adenosine by Diazoethane in Aqueous 1,2-Dimethoxyethane," *J. Org. Chem.*, 1974, 39(25), 3674-3676.
- Pitts, A.E. et al., "Inhibition of human telomerase by 2'-O-methyl-RNA," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 1998, 95, 11549-11554.
- Poopeiko, N.E. et al., "Xylo-configured Oligonucleotides (XNA, Xylo Nucleic Acid): Synthesis of Conformationally Restricted Derivatives and Hybridization Towards DNA and RNA Complexes," *Biorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters* 2003, vol. 13, pp. 2285-2290.
- Prakash, T.P. et al., Abstract of the 227th ACS National Meeting, Anaheim, CA, Mar. 28- Apr. 1, 2004.
- Prakash, T. P. et al., "Synthesis of Site-Specific Oligonucleotide-Polyamine Conjugates," *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.* (1994) 4(14):1733-1738.
- Prashar, Y., et al., "A method for display of 3'-end fragments of restriction enzyme-digested cDNAs for analysis of differential gene expression," *Methods Enzymol.*, 1999, 303, 258-272.
- Puglisi, et al., "Absorbance melting curves of RNA", *Methods in Enzymology*, 1989, 180, 304-325.
- Rajur, S. B. et al., "Covalent Protein-Oligonucleotide Conjugates for Efficient Delivery of Antisense Molecules," *Bioconjugate Chem.* (1997) 8(6):935-940.
- Rajwanshi, V.K., et al., "LNA stereoisomers: xylo-LNA ( $\beta$ -D-xylo configured locked nucleic acid) and  $\alpha$ -L-ribo configured locked nucleic acid), " *Chem. Commun.*, 1999, 1395-1396.
- Ranganathan, "Modification of the 21-Position of Purine Nucleosides: Synthesis of 21-a-Substituted-21-Deoxyadenosine Analogs", *Tetrahedron Letters*, 1977, 15, 1291-1294.
- Ransford et al., "2'-O-Ethyl Pyrimidine Nucleosides," *J. Carbohydrates - Nucleosides - Nucleotides*, 1974, 1(3), 275-278.
- Rao, et al., "A Novel One-step Procedure for the Conversion of Thymidine into 2,3'- Anhydrothymidine", *J. Chem. Soc. Chem. Commun.*, 1989, 997-998.
- Rausch, J.W. et al., "Hydrolysis of RNA/DNA hybrids containing nonpolar pyrimidine isosteres defines regions essential for HIV type 1 polypurine tract selection," *PNAS* (2003) 100(20): 11279-11284.
- Reddy, M.P. et al., "Fast Cleavage and Deprotection of Oligonucleotides," *Tetrahedron Letters*, 1994, 35(25), 4311-4314.
- Reese, C.B. et al., "An Acetal Group Suitable for the Protection of 2'-hydroxy Functions in Rapid Oligoribonucleotide Synthesis," *Tetrahedron Letters*, 1986, 27(20), 2291-2294.
- Renneberg, D. et al., "Antisense properties of tricyclo-DNA," *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 2002, 30(13), 2751-2757.
- Renneberg, D., et al., "Watson-Crick base-pairing properties of tricyclo-DNA," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 2002, 124, 5993-6002.
- Revankar et al., "Synthesis and Antiviral/Antitumor of Certain 3-Seazaguanine Nucleosides and Nucleotides", *J. Med. Chem.* 1984, 24, 1389-1396.
- Rhodes, J. et al., "Therapeutic potentiation of the immune system by costimulatory Schiff-baseforming drugs," *Nature* (1995) 377(6544):71-75.
- Robins, et al., "Nucleic Acid Related Compounds. 42. A General Procedure for the Efficient Deoxygenation of Secondary Alcohols. Regiospecific and Stereoselective Conversion of Ribonucleosides to 2'-Deoxynucleosides", *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1983, 105, 4059-4065.
- Robins, et al., "Synthesis of 2'-Deoxytubercidin, 2'-Deoxyadenosine, and Related 2'-Deoxynucleosides via a Novel Direct Stereospecific Sodium Salt Glycosylation Procedure", *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1984, 106, 6379-6382.
- Roelen et al., "Synthesis of Nucleic Acid Methylphos-Phonothioates", *Nucleic Acids Research* 1988, 16(15), 7633-7645.
- Rottman et al., "Influence of 2'-O-Alkylation on the Structure of Single-Stranded Polynucleotides and the Stability of 2'-O-Alkylated Polynucleotide Complexes," *Biochem.*, 1974, 13, 2762-2771.
- Ruby, et al., "An Early Hierarchic Role of U1 Small Nuclear Ribonucleoprotein in Spliceosome Assembly", *Science*, 1988, 242, 1028-1035.

- Rump, E. T. et al., "Preparation of Conjugates of Oligodeoxynucleotides and Lipid Structures and Their Interaction with Low-Density Lipoprotein," *Bioconjugate Chem.* (1998) 9(3):341-349.
- Ryan, et al., "Synthesis of 2'-Thio-D-ribose and 2'-Thioadenosine Derivatives", *J. Org. Chem.*, 1971, 36(18), 2646-2657.
- Sambrook, et al., "Molecular Cloning. A Laboratory Manual", Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, 1989, vol. 2, pp. 11.31-11.32.
- San et al., "Safety and short term toxicity of a novel cationic lipid formulation for human gene therapy", *Human Gene Therapy*, 1993, 4, 781-788.
- Sanghvi, Y.S. et al., "Heterocyclic Base Modifications in Nucleic acids and their Applications in Antisense Oligonucleotides", *Antisense Research and Applications*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, Chapter 15, 1993, 273-288.
- Scaringe, S.A. et al., "Novel RNA Synthesis Method Using 5'-O-Silyl-2'-O-orthoester Protecting Groups," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1998, 120(45), 11820-11821.
- Scaringe, S.A., "RNA Oligonucleotide Synthesis via 5'-Silyl-2'-Orthoester Chemistry," *Methods*, 2001, 23, 206-217.
- Scaringe, S.A., Thesis entitled, "Design and Development of New Protecting Groups for RNA Synthesis," University of Colorado (1996).
- Scherer et al., "Approaches for the sequence-specific knockdown of mRNA," *Nat. Biotechnol.*, 2003, 21(12), 1457-1465.
- Schöning, K.-U., et al., "Chemical etiology of nucleic acid structure: the  $\alpha$ -thiofuranosyl-(3'  $\rightarrow$ 2') oligonucleotide system," *Science*, 2000, 290, 1347-1351.
- Schwartz, et al., "A microtransfection method using the luciferase-encoding reporter gene for the assay of human immunodeficiency virus LTR promoter activity", *Gene*, 1990, 88, 197-205.
- Schwartz, M.E. et al., "Rapid Synthesis of Oligoribonucleotides Using 2'-O-(o-Nitrobenzyloxymethyl)-Protected Monomers," *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1992, 2(9), 1019-1024.
- Schwarz, D.S. et al., "Asymmetry in the Assembly of the RNAi Enzyme Complex," *Cell*, 2003, 115(2), 199-208.
- Schwarz, D.S., et al., "Evidence that siRNAs function as guides, not primers, in the Drosophila and human RNAi pathways," *Molecular Cell*, Sep. 2002, 10(3), 537-548.
- Searle, M. S. et al., "On the Stability of Nucleic Acid Structures in Solution: Enthalpy-Entropy Compensations, Internal Rotations and Reversibility," *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1993, 21(9), 2051-2056.
- Seela, et al., "Palindromic Octa- and Dodecanucleotides Containing 2'-Deoxytubercidin: Synthesis, Hairpin Formation, and Recognition by the Endonuclease", *Biochemistry*, 1987, 26, 2232-2238.
- Seliger, H., et al., "Synthetic Oligonucleotides for Biomedical Applications," *Nucleic Acids Symp Ser.*, 1991, 24:193-196.
- Shea et al., "Synthesis, hybridization properties and antiviral activity of lipid-oligodeoxynucleotide conjugates", *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1990, 18(13), 3777-3783.
- Sheehan, D. et al., "Biochemical properties of phosphonoacetate and thiophosphonoacetate oligodeoxyribonucleotides," *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 2003, 31(14), 4109-4118.
- Shi, Y., "Mammalian RNAi for the masses," *Trends in Genetics* (2003) 19(1): 9-12.
- Sigman, "Nuclease Activity of 1,10-Phenanthroline-Copper Ion", *Acc. Chem. Res.*, 1986, 19, 180-186.
- Sijen, T. et al., "On the role of RNA amplification in dsRNA-triggered gene silencing," *Cell*, Nov. 16, 2001, 107, 465-476.
- Singer et al., "Alkylation of Ribose in RNA Reacted with Ethylnitrosourea at Neutrality," *Biochem.*, 1976, 15(23), 5052.
- Singh, S.K. et al., "LNA (locked nucleic acids): synthesis and high-affinity nucleic acid recognition," *Chem. Commun.*, 1998, 4, 455-456.
- Singh, S.K., et al., "Synthesis of 2'-amino-LNA: a novel conformationally restricted high-affinity oligonucleotide analogue with a handle," *J. Org. Chem.*, 1998, 63, 10035-10039.
- Skorski, T. et al., "Antileukemia effect of c-myc N3'P5A phosphoramidate antisense oligonucleotides in vivo," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 1997, 94, 3966-3971.
- Smith et al., "Antiviral effect of an oligo(nucleoside methylphosphonate) complementary to the splice junction of herpes simplex virus type 1 immediate early pre-mRNAs 4 and 5", *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 1986, 83, 2787-2791.
- Smith, T.F. et al., "Comparison of Biosequences," *Adv. Appl. Math.*, 1981, 2, 482-489.
- Song, E. et al., "RNA interference targeting Fas protects mice from fulminant hepatitis," *Nature Med.*, 2003, 9(3), 347-351.
- Song, J.-J. et al., "The Crystal Structure of Argonaute and Its Implication for RISC Slicer Activity," *Science*, 2004, 305, 1434-1437.
- Song, J.-J. et al., "The crystal structure of the Argonaute2 PAZ domain reveals an RNA binding motif in RNAi effector complexes," *Nature Struct. Biol.*, 2003, 10(12), 1026-1032.
- Soutschek, J. et al., "Therapeutic silencing of an endogenous gene by systemic administration of modified siRNAs," *Nature*, 2004, 432(7014), 173-178.
- Sproat, et al., "Highly Efficient Chemical Synthesis of 2'-O-methyloligoribonucleotides and Tetrabiotinylated Derivatives; Novel Probes That are Resistant to Degradation by RNA or DNA Specific Nucleases", *Nucleic Acids Research*, 1989, 17, 3373-3386.
- Sproat, et al., "New synthetic routes to protected purine 2'-O-methylriboside-3'-O-phosphoramidites using a novel alkylation procedure", *Nucleic Acids Research*, 1990, 18, 41-49.
- Steffens, R., et al., "168. Nucleic-acid analogs with constraint conformational flexibility in the sugar-phosphate backbone tricyclic-DNA", *Helv. Chim. Acta*, 1997, 80, 2426-2439.
- Steffens, R., et al., "Synthesis and thermodynamic and biophysical properties of tricyclic-DNA," *Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1999, 121(14), 3249-3255.
- Stein, et al., "Oligodeoxynucleotides as Inhibitors of Gene Expression: A Review", *Cancer Research*, 1988, 48, 2659-2668.
- Stein, et al., "Physicochemical properties of phosphorothioate oligodeoxynucleotides", *Nucleic Acids Research*, 1988, 16, 3209-3221.
- Stufkens, et al., "Dynamic Jahn-Teller Effect in the Excited States of SeCl6<sup>2-</sup>, SeBr6<sup>2-</sup>, TeCl6<sup>2-</sup> and TeBr6<sup>2-</sup>", *Recueil des Travaux Chimiques des Pays-Bas* 1970, 89, 1185-1201.
- Suciu et al., "Synthesis of 9-(2,5-dideoxy- $\beta$ -D-glycero-pent-4-enofuranosyl)adenine", *Carbohydrate Research*, 1975, 44, 112-115.
- Sui, G., et al., "A DNA vector-based RNAi technology to suppress gene expression in mammalian cells," *PNAS*, 2002, 99(8), 5515-5520.
- Sutcliffe, J.G. et al., "TOGA: An automated parsing technology for analyzing expression of nearly all genes," *PNAS*, 2000, 97(5), 1976-1981.
- Svinarchuk, F.P. et al., "Inhibition of HIV proliferation in MT-4 cells by antisense oligonucleotide conjugated to lipophilic groups," *Biochimie*, 1993, 75, 49-54.
- Tabara, H. et al., "RNAi in *C. elegans*: Soaking in the Genome Sequence," *Science*, 1998, 282(5388), 430-431.
- Tamanini, F. et al., "The fragile X-related proteins FXRIP and FXRZP contain a functional nucleolar-targeting signal equivalent to the HIV-1 regulatory proteins," *Hum. Mol. Genet.* (2000) 9(10):1487-1493.
- Tang, X.-Q. et al., "2'-C-Branched Ribonucleosides: Synthesis of the Phosphoramidite Derivatives of 2'-C-Beta-Methylcytidine and Their Incorporation into Oligonucleotides," *J. Org. Chem.*, 1999, 64(3), 747-754.
- Tazawa et al., "A Novel Procedure for the Synthesis of 2'-O-Alkyl Nucleotides" *Biochem.*, 1972, 11(26), 4931.
- Thompson, "Applications of Antisense and siRNAs During Preclinical Drug Development," *DDT* (2002) 7(17): 912-917.
- Tidd, D.M. et al., "Evaluation of N-ras oncogene anti-sense, sense and nonsense sequence methylphosphonate oligonucleotide analogues," *Anti-Cancer Drug Design*, 1988, 3(2), 117-127.
- Tijsterman, M. et al., "RNA Helicase MUT-14-Dependent Gene Silencing Triggered in *C. elegans* by Short Antisense RNAs," *Science*, 295, 694-697, 2002.
- Timmons, L. et al., "Ingestion of bacterially expressed dsRNAs can produce specific and potent genetic interference in *Caenorhabditis elegans*," *Gene*, 2001, 263(1-2), 103-112.
- Timmons, L. et al., "Specific interference by ingested dsRNA," *Nature*, 1998, 395(6705), 854.

- To, K.-Y. "Identification of differential gene expression by high throughput analysis," *Comb. Chem. & High Throughput Screen*, 2000, 3, 235-241.
- Tuschl et al., "Targeted mRNA degradation by double-stranded RNA in vitro," *Genes Dev*, 1999, 13(24), 3191-3197.
- U.S. Appl. No. 09/315,298 filed May 20, 1999, by Teng et al.
- U.S. Appl. No. 60/423,760 filed Nov. 5, 2002, by Baker et al.
- Van der Krol, et al., "Modulation of Eukaryotic Gene Expression by Complementary RNA or DNA Sequences", *BioTechniques*, 1988, 6, 958-976.
- Vickers, T.A. et al., "Efficient Reduction of Target RNAs by Small Interfering RNA and RNase H-dependent Antisense Agents," *J. Biol. Chem.*, 2003, 278(9), 7108-7118.
- Wada, A. et al., "Nuclear export of actin: a novel mechanism regulating the subcellular localization of a major cytoskeletal protein," *EMBO J.* (1998) 17:1635-1641.
- Wahlestedt, C., et al., "Potent and nontoxic antisense oligonucleotides containing locked nucleic acids," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 2000, 97(10), 5633-5638.
- Welder, et al., "Antisense DNA and RNA: Progress and Prospects", *Genes & Development*, 1988, 2, 502-504.
- Welder, et al., "Role of RNase H in Hybrid-Arrested Translation by Antisense Oligonucleotides", *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 1988, 85, 5011-5015.
- Wang, J., et al., "Cyclohexene nucleic acids (CeNA): Serum stable oligonucleotides that activate RNase H and increase duplex stability with complementary RNA," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 2000, 122, 8595-8602.
- Wang, J., et al., "Synthesis and binding property of an oligonucleotide containing tetrafluorophenoxazine," *Tetrahedron Lett.*, 1998, 39, 8385-8388.
- Wang, X. et al., "Modular Recognition of RNA by a Human Pumilio-Homology Domain," *Cell* (2002) 110:501-512.
- Wei, Z. et al., "Hybridization properties of oligodeoxynucleotide pairs bridged by polyarginine peptides," *Nucleic Acids Res.* (1996) 24(4):655-661.
- Wein, G. et al., "The 3'-UTR of the mRNA coding for the major protein kinase C substrate MARCKS contains a novel CU-rich element interacting with MRNA stabilizing factors HuD and HuR," *Eur. J. Biochem.* (2003) 270:350-365.
- Wengel, J., et al., "LNA (locked nucleic acid)," *Nucleosides, Nucleotides*, 1999, 18(6 & 7), 1365-1370.
- Wianny et al., "Specific interference with gene function by double-stranded RNA in early mouse development," *Nature Cell Biology* (2000) 2: 70-75.
- Wilds, C.J., et al., "Duplex recognition by oligonucleotides containing 2'-deoxy-2'-fluoro-D-arabinose and 2'-deoxy-2'-fluoro-D-ribose. Intermolecular 2'-OH-phosphate contacts versus sugar puckering in the stabilization of triple-helical complexes," *Bioconjugate Chem.*, 1999, 10, 299-305.
- Williams, D.M., et al., "Properties of 2'-Fluorothymidine-Containing Oligonucleotides: Interaction with Restriction Endonuclease EcoRV," *Biochemistry*, 1991, 30, 4001-4009.
- Wolfe, S., et al., "The gauche effect. Some stereochemical consequences of adjacent electron pairs and polar bonds," *Acc. Of Chem. Res.*, 1972, 5, 102-111.
- Wouters, J. et al., "5-Substituted Pyrimidine 1,5-Anhydronhexitols: Conformational Analysis and Interaction with Viral Thymidine Kinase," *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1999, 9, 1563-1566.
- Wright, P. et al., "Large Scale Synthesis of Oligonucleotides via Phosphoramidite Nucleosides and a High-loaded Polystyrene Support," *Tetrahedron Lett.*, 1993, 34(21), 3373-3376.
- Wu, H. et al., "Properties of Cloned and Expressed Human RNase H1," *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 1999, vol. 274, pp. 28270-28278.
- Wu, X., et al., "Base-pairing systems related to TNA:  $\alpha$ -threofuranosyl oligonucleotides containing phosphoramidate linkages," *Organic Lett.*, 2002, 4(8), 1279-1282.
- Yang, Y. et al., "HIV-1 TAT-mediated protein transduction and subcellular localization using novel expression vectors," *FEBS Letters* (2002) 532, 36-44.
- Yeung, et al., "Photoreactives and Thermal Properties of Psoralen Cross-Links", *Biochemistry* 1988, 27, 3204-3210.
- Yu, J.-Y., et al., "RNA interference by expression of short-interfering RNAs and hairpin RNAs in mammalian cells," *PNAS*, 2002, 99(9), 6047-6052.
- Zamecnik, P.C. et al., "Inhibition of Rous sarcoma virus replication and cell transformation by a specific oligodeoxynucleotide," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 1978, 75(1), 280-284.
- Zamore, P.D. et al., "Ancient Pathways Programmed by Small RNAs," *Science*, 2002, 296, 1265-1269.
- Zamore, P.D. et al., "RNAi: Double-Stranded RNA Directs the ATP-Dependent Cleavage of mRNA at 21 to 23 Nucleotide Intervals," *Cell*, 2000, 101, 25-33.
- Zanta, M. A. et al., "Gene delivery: A single nuclear localization signal peptide is sufficient to carry DNA to the cell nucleus," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* (1999) 96:91-96.
- Zhang et al., "Single Processing Center Models for Human Dicer and Bacterial RNase III," *Cell*, 2004, 118, 57-68.
- Zhang et al., "Targeted Gene Silencing by Small Interfering RNA-Based Knock-Down Technology," *Current Pharmaceutical Biotechnology*, 2004, 5, 1-7.
- Zhang, H. et al., "Reduction of liver Fas expression by an antisense oligonucleotide protects mice from fulminant hepatitis," *Nature Biotech.*, 2000, 18, 862-867.
- Zhang, J., et al., "PowerBLAST: A new network Blast application for interactive or automated sequence analysis and annotation," *Genome Res.*, 1997, 7, 649-656.
- Zhang, Z. et al., "Uptake of N-(4'-pyridoxyl)amines and release of amines by renal cells: A model for transporter-enhanced delivery of bioactive compounds," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* (1991) 88:10407-10410.
- Zhao et al., "Effect of different chemically modified oligodeoxynucleotides on immune stimulation," *Biochemical Pharmacology*, 1996, 51, 173-182.
- Zhou, Y., et al., "Post-transcriptional suppression of gene expression in xenopus embryos by small interfering RNA," *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 2002, 30(7), 1664-1669.
- Zhu, T. et al., "Oligonucleotide-Poly-L-ornithine Conjugates: Binding to Complementary DNA and RNA," *Antisense Res. Dm.* 3:265-275., 1993.
- Zon, "Oligonucleotide Analogues as Potential Chemotherapy Agents", *Pharm. Res.*, 1988, 5(9), 539-549.
- Zon, "Synthesis of Backbone-Modified DNA Analogues for Biological Applications", *J. Protein Chemistry*, 1987, 6, 131-145.
- Zuckermann, R. N. et al., "Site-Selective Cleavage of RNA by a Hybrid Enzyme," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* (1988) 110:1614-1615.

\* cited by examiner



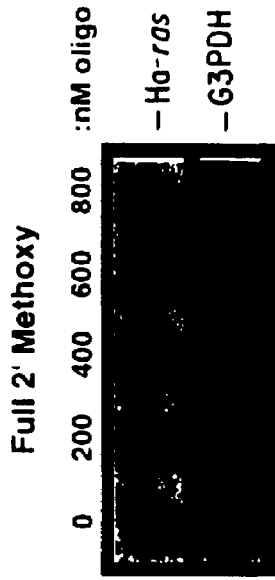


FIG. 2A

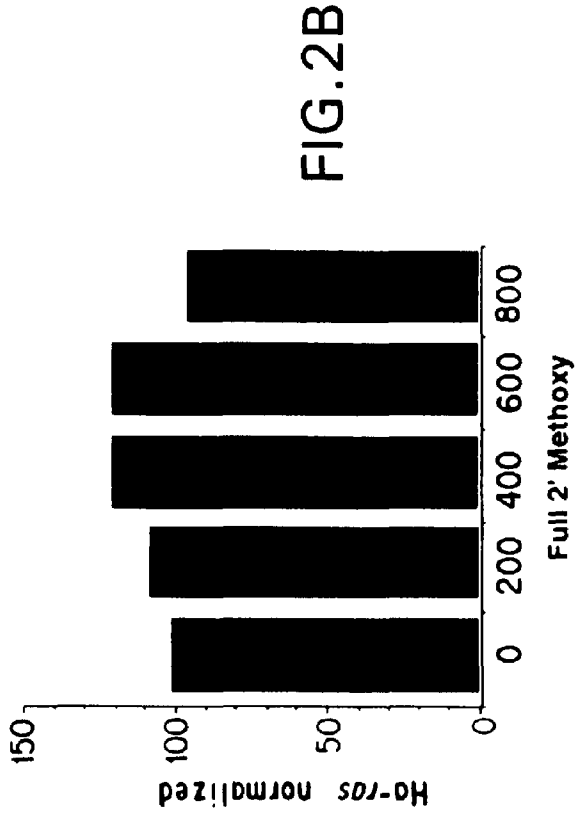


FIG. 2B

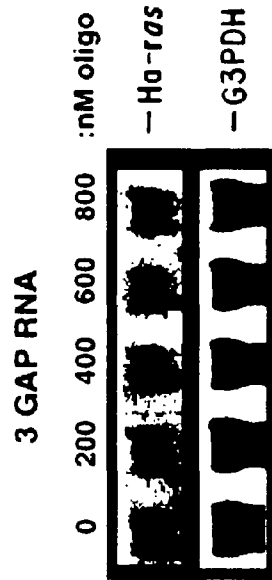


FIG. 2C

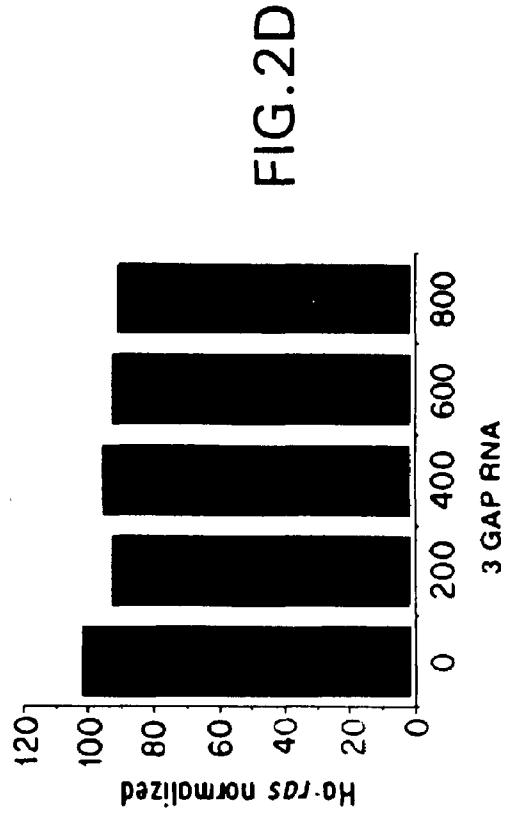


FIG. 2D

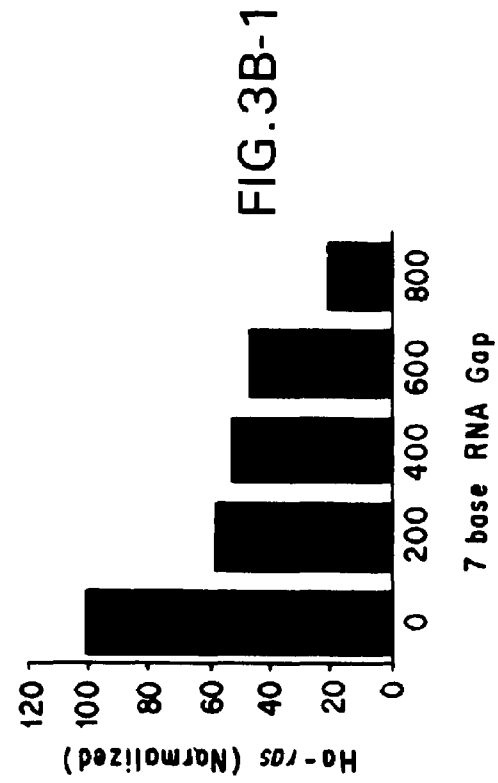
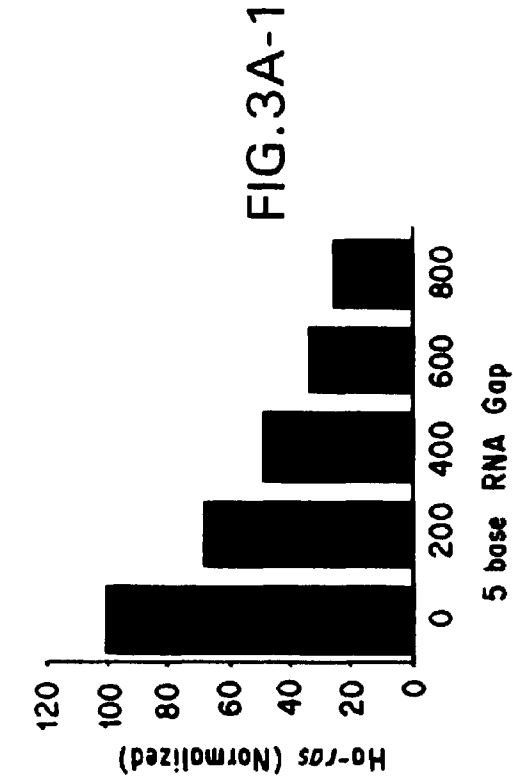
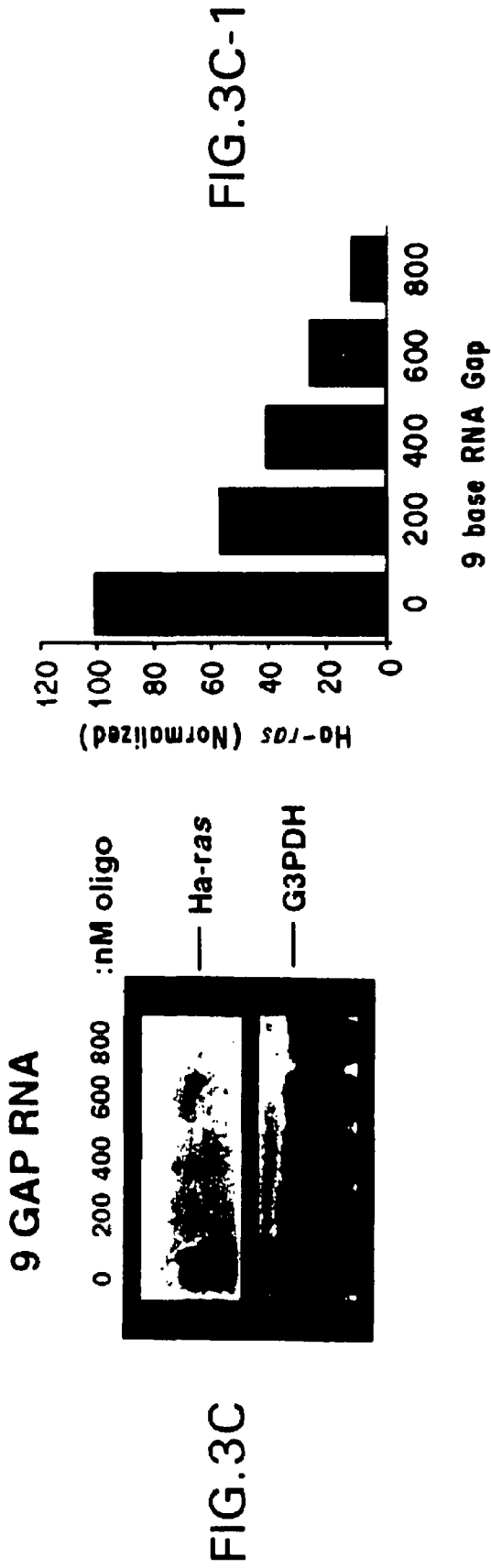


FIG. 3A

FIG. 3B



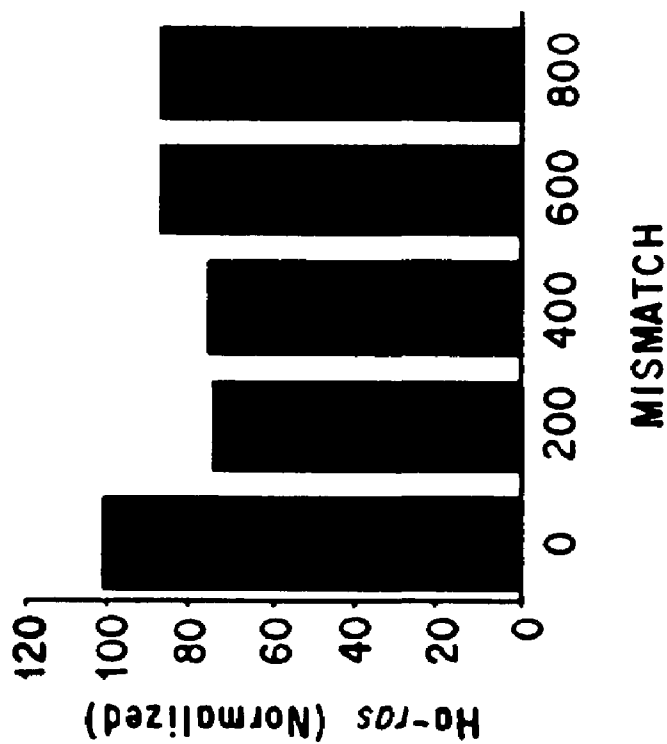


FIG.3E-1

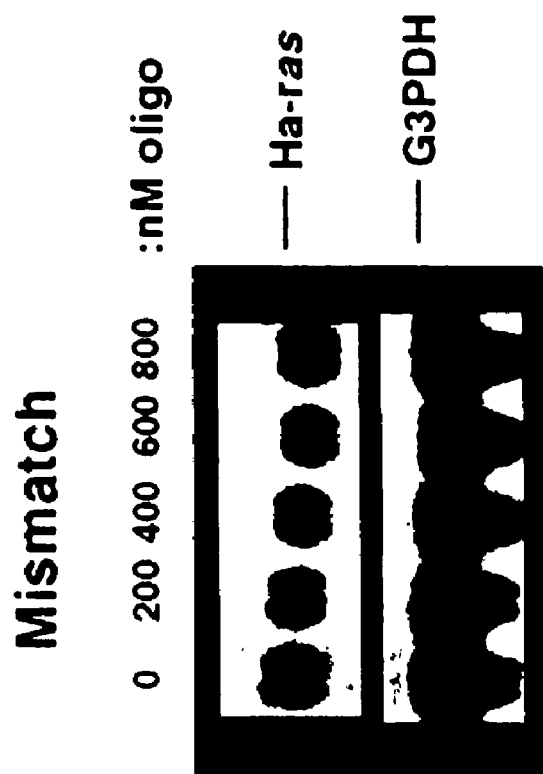


FIG.3E

DUPLEX: (SENSE/9 GAP RNA)

T24

MARKER

EXTRACT (Min)

0 5 15

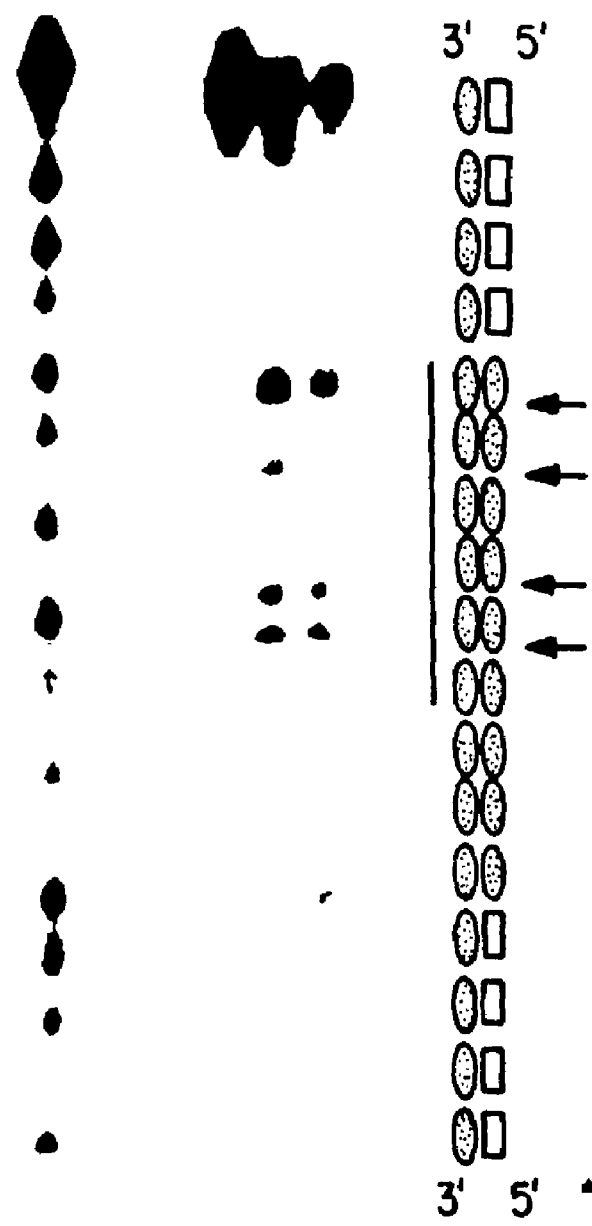


FIG.4

DUPLEX: (SENSE/9 GAP DNA) (SENSE/DNA) (SENSE/9 GAP RNA)

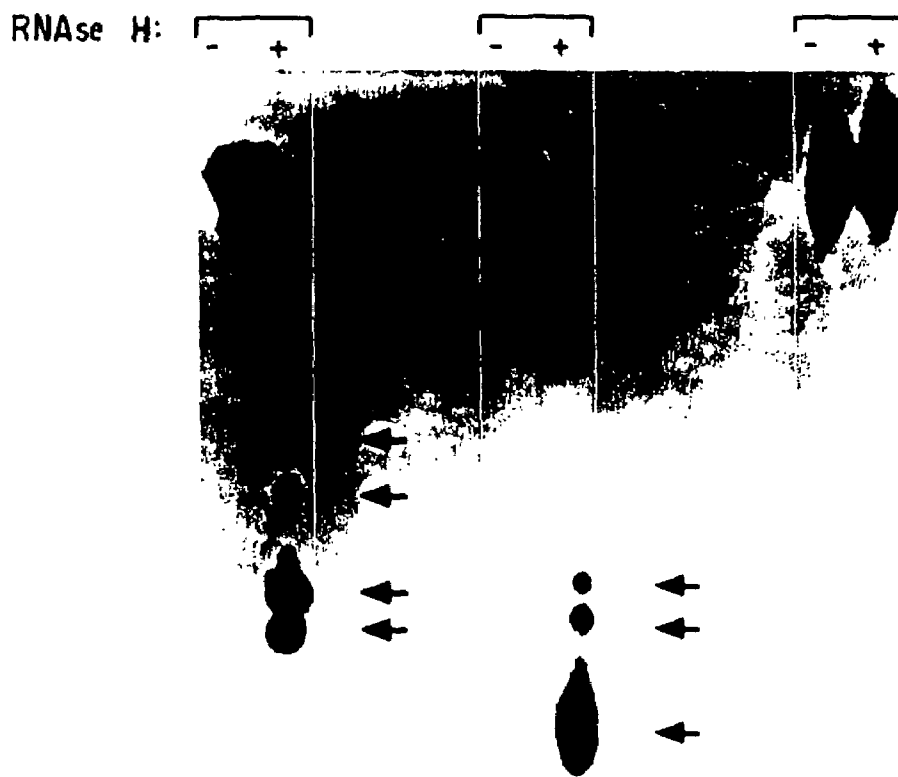


FIG.5

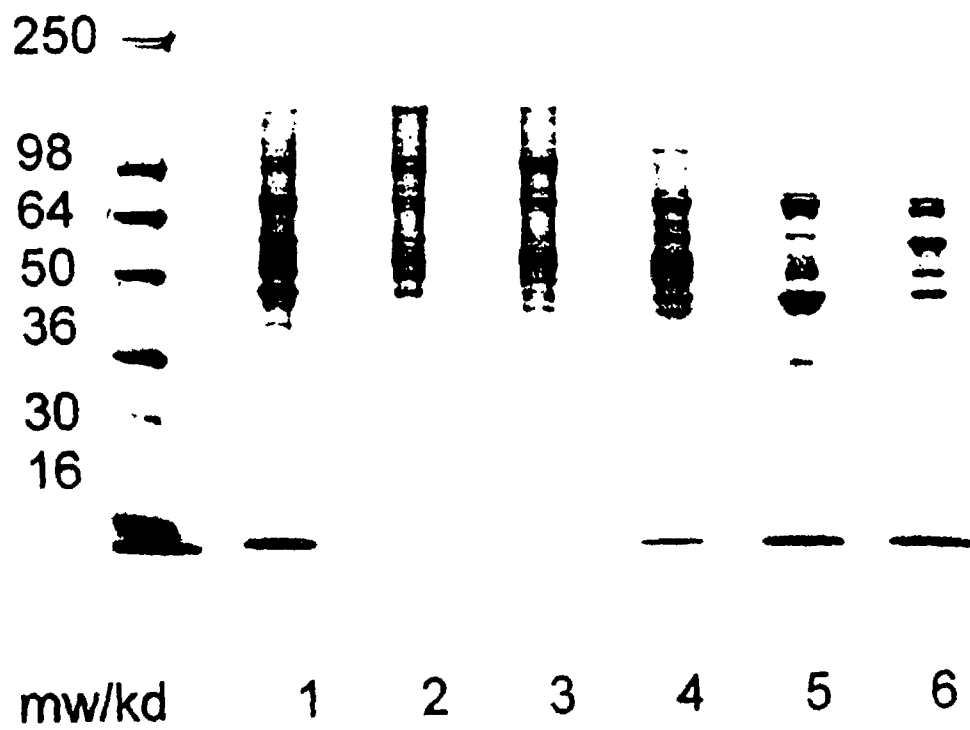


FIG.6

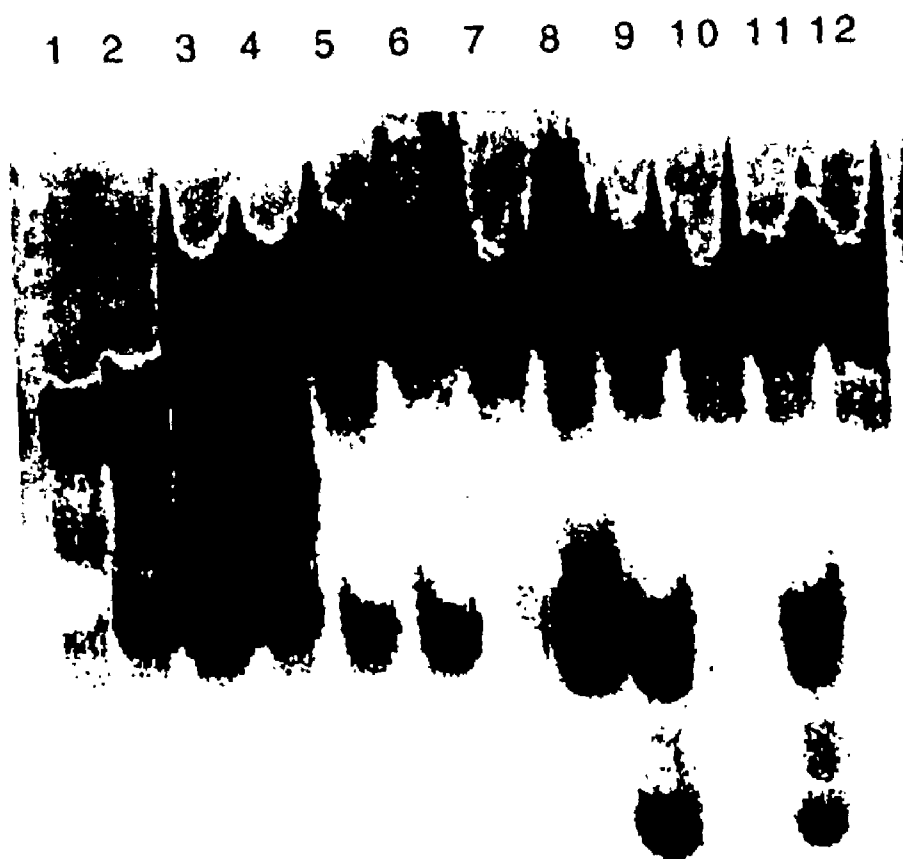


FIG. 7

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10

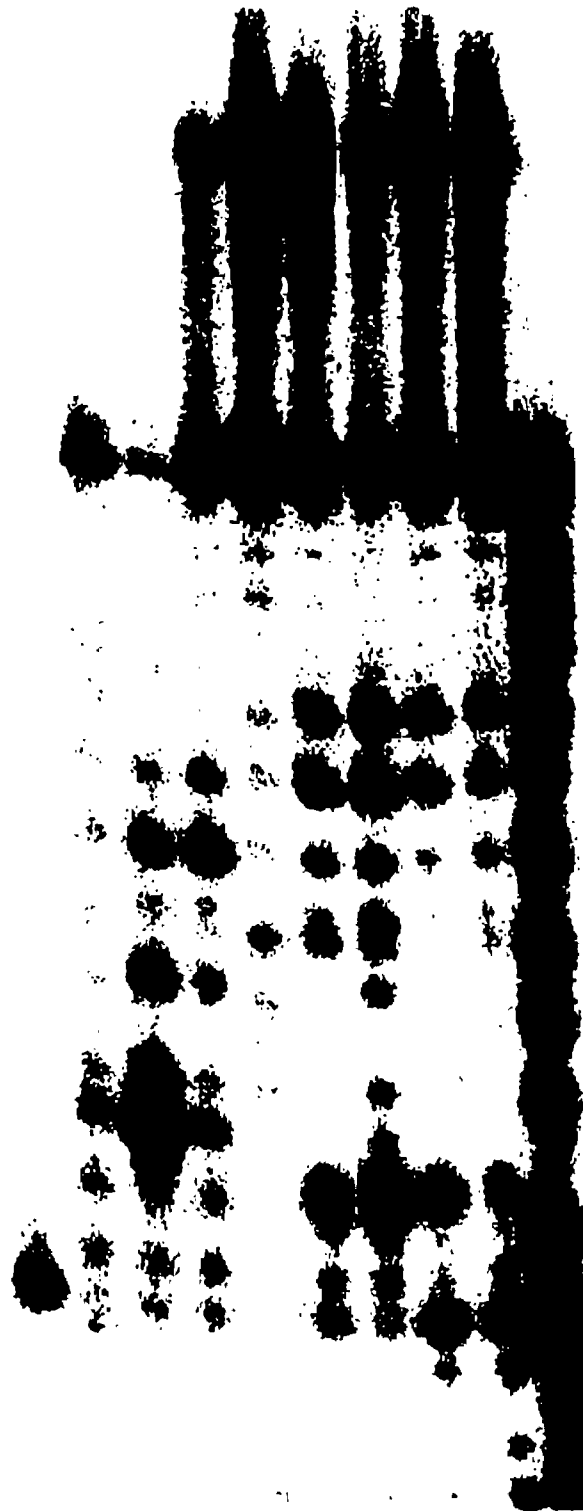


FIG.8

## OLIGORIBONUCLEOTIDES AND RIBONUCLEASES FOR CLEAVING RNA

### CROSS REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

This application is a continuation of U.S. Ser. No. 09/479,783, filed Jan. 7, 2000, which is a divisional of U.S. Ser. No. 08/870,608, filed Jun. 6, 1997, now U.S. Pat. No. 6,107,094, which is a continuation in part of U.S. Ser. No. 08/659,440, filed Jun. 6, 1996, now U.S. Pat. No. 5,898,031.

### FIELD OF THE INVENTION

This invention is directed to the synthesis and use of oligomeric compounds, including oligoribonucleotides and oligoribonucleosides, useful for strand cleavage of target RNA strands. Included in the invention are oligoribonucleotides having modified sugars, bases or phosphate backbones and oligoribonucleosides having standard sugars and bases or modified sugars and bases linked together via non-phosphate backbones. Further included in the invention are chimeric oligoribonucleotides and oligoribonucleosides having mixed backbones, either phosphate or non-phosphate. Also included in the invention are mammalian ribonucleases, i.e., enzymes that degrade RNA. Such a ribonuclease is referred to herein as a dsRNase, wherein "ds" indicates the RNase's specificity for certain double-stranded RNA substrates. The oligoribonucleotides, oligoribonucleosides, ribonucleases and ribonuclease substrates of the invention are useful for therapeutics, diagnostics and as research reagents.

### BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Oligonucleotides are known to hybridize to single-stranded DNA or RNA molecules. Hybridization is the sequence-specific base pair hydrogen bonding of nucleobases of the oligonucleotides to nucleobases of target DNA or RNA. Such nucleobase pairs are said to be complementary to one another.

The complementarity of oligonucleotides has been used for inhibition of a number of cellular targets. Such complementary oligonucleotides are commonly described as being antisense oligonucleotides. Various reviews describing the results of these studies have been published including Progress In Antisense Oligonucleotide Therapeutics, Crooke, S. T. and Bennett, C. F., *Annu. Rev. Pharmacol. Toxicol.*, 1996, 36, 107-129. These oligonucleotides have proven to be very powerful research tools and diagnostic agents. Further, certain oligonucleotides that have been shown to be efficacious are currently in human clinical trials.

To date most oligonucleotides studied have been oligodeoxynucleotides. Antisense oligodeoxynucleotides are believed to cause a reduction in target RNA levels principally through the action of RNase H, an endonuclease that cleaves the RNA strand of DNA:RNA duplexes. This enzyme, thought to play a role in DNA replication, has been shown to be capable of cleaving the RNA component of the DNA:RNA duplexes in cell free systems as well as in *Xenopus* oocytes. RNase H is very sensitive to structural alterations in antisense oligonucleotides. This sensitivity is such that prior attempts to increase the potency of oligonucleotides by increasing affinity, stability, lipophilicity and other characteristics by chemical modifications of the oligonucleotide have often resulted in oligonucleotides that are no longer substrates for RNase H. In addition, RNase H activity is quite variable. Thus a given disease state may not be a candidate for antisense

therapy only because the target tissue has insufficient RNase H activity. Therefore it is clear that effective terminating mechanisms in addition to RNase H are of great value to the development of therapeutic and other agents.

Several publications describe the interaction of RNase H and oligonucleotides. A recently publication is: Crooke, et. al., *Biochem. J.*, 1995, 312, 599-608. Other earlier papers are: (1) Dagle et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 1990, 18, 4751; (2) Dagle et al., *Antisense Research And Development*, 1991, 1, 11; (3) Eder et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 1991, 266, 6472; and (4) Dagle et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 1991, 19, 1805. According to these publications, DNA oligonucleotides having both unmodified phosphodiester internucleoside linkages and modified phosphorothioate internucleoside linkages are substrates for cellular RNase H. Since they are substrates, they activate the cleavage of target RNA by RNase H. However, these authors further noted that in *Xenopus* embryos, both phosphodiester linkages and phosphorothioate linkages are also subject to exonuclease degradation. Nuclease degradation is detrimental since it rapidly depletes the oligonucleotide.

As described in references (1), (2) and (4), to stabilize oligonucleotides against nuclease degradation while still providing for RNase H activation, 2'-deoxy oligonucleotides having a short section of phosphodiester linked nucleosides positioned between sections of phosphoramidate, alkyl phosphonate or phosphotriester linkages were constructed. While the phosphoramidate-containing oligonucleotides were stabilized against exonucleases, in reference (4) the authors noted that each phosphoramidate linkage resulted in a loss of 1.6° C. in the measured  $T_m$  value of the phosphoramidate-containing oligonucleotides. Such a decrease in the  $T_m$  value is indicative of a decrease in hybridization between the oligonucleotide and its target strand.

Other authors have commented on the effect such a loss of hybridization between an oligonucleotide and its target strand can have. Saison-Behmoaras et al. (*EMBO Journal*, 1991, 10, 1111) observed that even though an oligonucleotide could be a substrate for RNase H, cleavage efficiency by RNase H was low because of weak hybridization to the mRNA. The authors also noted that the inclusion of an acridine substitution at the 3' end of the oligonucleotide protected the oligonucleotide from exonucleases.

U.S. Pat. No. 5,013,830, issued May 7, 1991, discloses mixed oligomers comprising an RNA oligomer, or a derivative thereof, conjugated to a DNA oligomer via a phosphodiester linkage. The RNA oligomers also bear 2'-O-alkyl substituents. However, being phosphodiesters, the oligomers are susceptible to nuclease cleavage.

European Patent application 339,842, published Nov. 2, 1989, discloses 2"-O-substituted phosphorothioate oligonucleotides, including 2'-O-methylribooligonucleotide phosphorothioate derivatives. The above-mentioned application also discloses 2'-O-methyl phosphodiester oligonucleotides which lack nuclease resistance.

U.S. Pat. No. 5,149,797, issued Sep. 22, 1992, discloses mixed phosphate backbone oligonucleotides which include an internal portion of deoxynucleotides linked by phosphodiester linkages, and flanked on each side by a portion of modified DNA or RNA sequences. The flanking sequences include methyl phosphonate, phosphoromorpholidate, phosphoropiperazidate or phosphoramidate linkages.

U.S. Pat. No. 5,256,775, issued Oct. 26, 1993, describes mixed oligonucleotides that incorporate phosphoramidate linkages and phosphorothioate or phosphorodithioate linkages.

U.S. Pat. No. 5,403,711, issued Apr. 4, 1995, describes RNA:DNA probes targeted to DNA. The probes are labeled and are used in a system that includes RNase H. The RNase H enzyme cleaves those probes that bind to DNA targets. The probes can include modified phosphate groups. Mentioned are phosphotriester, hydrogen phosphonates, alkyl or aryl phosphonates, alkyl or aryl phosphoramidates, phosphorothioates or phosphoroselenates.

In contrast to the pharmacological inhibition of gene expression via the RNase H enzyme, it is becoming clear that organisms from bacteria to humans use endogenous antisense RNA transcripts to alter the stability of some target mRNAs and regulate gene expression, see Nellen, W., and Lichtenstein, C., *Curr. Opin. Cell. Biol.*, 1993, 18, 419-424 and Nellen, W., et al, *Biochem. Soc. Trans.* 1992, 20, 750-754. Perhaps one of the best examples comes from certain bacteria where an antisense RNA regulates the expression of mok mRNA, which is required for the translation of the cytotoxic hok protein. Thus as the antisense level drops, mok mRNA levels and consequently hok protein levels rise and the cells die, see Gerdes, K. et al., *J. Mol. Biol.*, 1992, 226, 637-649. Other systems regulated by such mechanisms in bacteria include the RNA I-RNA II hybrid of the ColE1 plasmid, see Haeuptle, M. T., Frank, R., and Dobberstein, B., *Nucleic Acids Res.* 1986, 14, 1427, Knecht, D., *Cell Motil. Cytoskel.*, 1989, 14, 92-102; and Maniak, M., and Nellen, W., *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 1990, 18, 5375-5380; OOP-cII RNA regulation in bacteriophage Lambda, see Krinke, L., and Wulff, D. L. (1990) *Genes Dev.*, 1990, 4, 2223-2233; and the copA-copT hybrids in *E.coli*. See Blomberg, P., Wagner, E. G., and Nordstrom, K., *EMBO J.*, 1990, 9, 2331-2340. In *E.coli* the RNA:RNA duplexes formed have been shown to be substrates for regulated degradation by the endoribonuclease RNase III. Duplex dependent degradation has also been observed in the archaeobacterium, *Halobacterium salinarium*, where the antisense transcript reduces expression of the early (Ti) transcript of the phage gene phiH, see Stolt, P., and Zillig, W., *Mol. Microbiol.*, 1993, 7, 875-882. In several eukaryotic organisms endogenous antisense transcripts have also been observed. These include p53, see Khochbin and Lawrence, *EMBO*, 1989, 8, 4107-4114; basic fibroblast growth factor, see Volk et al, *EMBO*, 1989, 8, 69, 2983-2988; N-myc, see Krystal, G. W., Armstrong, B. C., and Battey, J. F., *Mol. Cell. Biol.*, 1990, 10, 4180-4191; eIF-2 $\alpha$ , see Noguchi et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 1994, 269, 29161-29167. The conservation of endogenously expressed antisense transcripts across evolutionary lines suggests that their biological roles and molecular mechanisms of action may be similar.

In bacteria, RNase III is the double stranded endoribonuclease (dsRNase) activity responsible for the degradation of some antisense:sense RNA duplexes. RNase III carries out site-specific cleavage of dsRNA-containing structures, see Saito, H. and Richardson, C. C., *Cell*, 1981, 27, 533-540. The RNase III also plays an important role in mRNA processing and in the processing of rRNA precursors into 16S, 23S and 5S ribosomal RNAs, see Dunn, J. J. and Studier, F. W. *J. Mol. Biol.*, 1975, 99, 487. In eukaryotes, a yeast gene (RNT1) has recently been cloned that codes for a protein that has homology to *E.coli* RNase III and shows dsRNase activity in ribosomal RNA processing, see Elela, S. A., Igel, H. and Ares, M. *Cell*, 1996, 85, 115-124. Avian cells treated with interferon produce and secrete a soluble nuclease capable of degrading dsRNA, see Meegan, J. and Marcus, P. I., *Science*, 1989, 244, 1089-1091. However such a secreted dsRNA activity is not a likely candidate to be involved in cytoplasmic degradation of antisense:sense RNA duplexes. Despite these findings almost nothing is known about human or mammalian dsRNase

activities. While it has been recognized that regulation (via any mechanism) of a target RNA strand would be useful, to date only two mechanisms for eliciting such an effect are known. These are hybridization arrest and use of an oligodeoxynucleotide to effect RNase H cleavage of the RNA target. Accordingly, there remains a continuing long-felt need for methods and compounds for regulation of target RNA. Such regulation of target RNA would be useful for therapeutic purposes both in vivo and ex vivo and, as well as, for diagnostic reagents and as research reagents including reagents for the study of both cellular and in vitro events.

#### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

In accordance with this invention there are provided oligomeric compounds formed from a linear sequence of linked ribonucleoside subunits that are specifically hybridizable to a preselected RNA target. The oligomeric compounds have at least a first segment and a second segment. The first segment incorporates at least one ribonucleoside subunit that is modified to improve at least one of its pharmacokinetic properties, its binding characteristics to target RNA or to modify its charge. The second segment includes at least four consecutive ribofuranosyl nucleoside subunits. The subunits of the oligomeric compounds are connected together in a linear sequence by internucleoside linkages that are stabilized from degradation as compared to phosphodiester linkages.

In certain preferred embodiments of the invention, the compounds will include a third segment having properties corresponding to the properties of the first segment. It is preferred to position the second segment between the first and third segments such that they form a continuous, linear sequences of linked nucleoside units. In preferred compounds the number of such linked nucleoside subunits will range from about eight to about fifty with a more preferred range being from about twelve to about thirty linked nucleoside subunits.

Modification of pharmacokinetic properties includes any one or more of the modification of binding, absorption, distribution or clearance properties of the compound. Modification of binding characteristics includes modification of the affinity or specificity of said compound to its target RNA. Modification of the charge of said compound includes modifying the net charge of the compound as compared to an unmodified compound. Normally modification of charge will decrease the overall net negative charge of a phosphorus linked oligomeric compound to provide the compound with less negative charge, a neutral charge or a net positive charge.

Further in accordance with this invention, there are provided oligomeric compounds formed from linear sequences of linked ribonucleoside subunits that are specifically hybridizable to a preselected RNA target. The oligomeric compounds have at least a first segment and a second segment. The first segment incorporates at least one ribonucleoside subunit that is functionalized to provide greater affinity to the target RNA. The second segment includes at least four ribofuranosyl nucleoside subunits. The subunits of the oligomeric compounds are connected together in a linear sequence by internucleoside linkages that are modified to stabilize the linkages from degradation as compared to phosphodiester linkages.

In certain preferred oligomeric compounds of the invention, the first or first and third segments of oligomeric compounds are formed of nucleoside subunits that include 2'-substituent groups thereon. In preferred embodiments, the 2'-substituent group includes fluoro, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>20</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>9</sub> aminoalkoxy, allyloxy, imidazolylalkoxy and polyethylene

glycol. Preferred alkoxy substituents include methoxy, ethoxy and propoxy. A preferred aminoalkoxy substituent is aminopropoxy. A preferred imidazolylalkoxy substituent is imidazolylpropoxy. A preferred polyethylene glycol substituent is -O-ethyl-O-methyl, i.e., methoxyethoxy or

$-\text{O}-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{O}-\text{CH}_3$ .  
In further preferred oligomeric compounds of the invention, the oligomeric compounds are formed of nucleoside subunits that are modified by including certain selected nucleobases thereon. In preferred embodiments, the selected nucleobases include 2,6-diaminopurine, N2-alkylpurines, N2-aminoalkylpurines, 7-deaza-7-substituted purines, 5-substituted pyrimidines, and 2-substituted pyrimidines.

Other preferred oligomeric compounds of the invention include oligoribonucleotides having nucleoside subunits connected by phosphorus linkages including phosphorothioate, 3'-(or -5')deoxy-3'-(or -5') thio-phosphorothioate, phosphorodithioate, phosphoroselenates, 3'-(or -5')deoxy phosphinates, borano phosphates, 3'-(or -5')deoxy-3'-(or 5')-amino phosphoramidates, hydrogen phosphonates, borano phosphate esters, phosphoramidates, alkyl or aryl phosphonates and phosphotriester linkages. A selected group of oligoribonucleotide linkages for use in linking the nucleosides of the second segment include phosphorothioate, phosphinates and phosphoramidates, all of which are charged species.

Further preferred oligomeric compounds of the invention may also include oligoribonucleosides having nucleoside subunits connected by carbonate, carbamate, silyl, sulfur, sulfonate, sulfonamide, formacetal, thioformacetal, oxime, methyleneimino, methylenemethylimino, methylenehydrazo, methylenedimethylhydrazo and methyleneoxymethylimino linkages.

Further preferred oligomeric compounds of the invention include having nucleoside subunits connected by alternating phosphorus and non-phosphorous linkages. Such non-phosphorous linkages include carbonate, carbamate, silyl, sulfur, sulfonate, sulfonamide, formacetal, thioformacetal, oxime, methyleneimino, methylenemethylimino, methylenehydrazo, methylenedimethylhydrazo and methyleneoxymethylimino linkages while the phosphorous linkages include phosphodiester, phosphorothioate, 3'-(or -5')deoxy-3'-(or -5') thio-phosphorothioate, phosphorodithioate, phosphoroselenates, 3'-(or -5')deoxy phosphinates, borano phosphates, 3'-(or -5')deoxy-3'-(or 5')-amino phosphoramidates, hydrogen phosphonates, borano phosphate esters, phosphoramidates, alkyl or aryl phosphonates and phosphotriester linkages.

Further preferred oligomeric compounds of the invention include oligoribonucleotides, oligoribonucleosides or mixtures of oligoribonucleotides and oligoribonucleosides having a plurality of linked nucleoside subunits that are linked in a sequences that is complementary strand of target RNA and wherein the sequence of the compound is divided into a first subsequence or segment and a second subsequence or segment. The first subsequence comprises linked nucleoside subunits bearing 2'-O-substituted-pentofuranosyl sugar moieties and the second subsequence comprises linked nucleoside subunits bearing 2'-hydroxyl-pentofuranosyl sugar moieties. Preferably, said second subsequence has from four to twelve or more nucleoside subunits, and more preferably, has five to about nine nucleoside subunits. In further preferred embodiments there exists a third subsequence, the nucleoside subunits of which are selected from those which are selectable for the first subsequence. It is preferred that the second subsequence be positioned between the first and the third subsequences. Such oligomeric compounds of the invention are also referred to as "chimeras," "chimeric" or "gapped" oligoribonucleotides or oligoribonucleosides.

In further preferred oligomeric compounds of the invention, nucleoside subunits bearing substituents that are modified to improve at least one of: pharmacokinetic binding, absorption, distribution or clearance properties of the compound: affinity or specificity of said compound to said target RNA: or modification of the charge of said compound, compared to an unmodified compound; are located at one or both of the 3' or the 5' termini of the oligomeric compounds. In certain preferred compounds there are from one to about eight nucleoside subunits that are substituted with such substituent groups.

The nucleoside subunits are joined together in a linear sequence to form the oligomeric compounds of the invention. Each nucleoside subunit includes a base fragment and a sugar fragment. The base fragment comprises a heterocyclic base, alternately hereinafter referred to as a nucleobase. The bases or nucleobases are covalently bonded to the sugar fragment. The sugar fragments may include a 2'-substituted sugar moiety, a 2'-hydroxyl sugar moiety or a sugar surrogate moiety.

Preferred nucleobases of the invention include purines and pyrimidines such as adenine, guanine, cytosine, uridine, and thymine, as well as other synthetic and natural nucleobases such as xanthine, hypoxanthine, 2-aminoadenine, 6-methyl and other alkyl derivatives of adenine and guanine, 2-propyl and other alkyl derivatives of adenine and guanine, 5-halouracil and cytosine, 5-propynyl uracil and cytosine, 6-azo uracil, cytosine and thymine, 5-uracil (pseudouracil), 4-thiouracil, 8-halo, amino, thiol, thioalkyl, hydroxyl and other 8-substituted adenines and guanines, 5-trifluoromethyl and other 5-substituted uracils and cytosines, and 7-methylguanine. Further purines and pyrimidines include those disclosed in U.S. Pat. Nos. 3,687,808, 5,484,908, 5,459,255, 5,457,191 and 5,614,617 (corresponding to U.S. patent application Ser. No. 07/971,978), and those disclosed in the *Concise Encyclopedia Of Polymer Science And Engineering*, pages 858-859, Kroschwitz, J. I., ed. John Wiley & Sons, 1990, and those disclosed by Englisch et al., *Angewandte Chemie, International Edition*, 1991, 30, 613.

Preferred sugar fragments are pentoribofuranosyl sugar moieties, i.e. the "natural" sugar moiety of messenger ribonucleic acids. Other sugar-like or sugar surrogate compounds suitable for use in the oligoribonucleotides or oligoribonucleosides of the invention include cyclobutyl nucleoside surrogates as described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,359,044, pyrrolidine nucleoside surrogates as described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,519,134, morpholino nucleoside surrogates as described in U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,142,047 and 5,235,033, and in related patent disclosures, and PNA (peptide nucleic acid) nucleoside surrogates.

In further preferred embodiments of the invention there are provided synthetic oligomeric compounds that are specifically hybridizable with a preselected RNA target and where the compounds include a first segment including at least one surrogate nucleoside subunit and a second segment comprising at least four ribofuranosyl nucleoside subunits located in a consecutive sequence and having 2'-hydroxyl moieties thereon. Further the nucleoside subunits of the oligomeric compound are connected by internucleoside linkages that are stable to degradation as compared to phosphodiester bonds.

In other preferred embodiments of the invention, there are provided synthetic oligomeric compounds that are specifically hybridizable with a preselected RNA target and that include a first segment having at least one ribofuranosyl nucleoside subunit that is not a DNA or RNA "major" building block nucleoside and a second segment that includes at least four consecutive ribofuranosyl nucleoside subunits having 2'-hydroxyl moieties thereon. The nucleoside subunits of

the compounds are connected by internucleoside linkages which are modified to stabilize the linkages from degradation as compared to phosphodiester linkages. Nucleoside subunits that are not DNA or RNA major building block nucleosides as that term is used in connection with this invention, are members of the group consisting of adenosine, 2'-deoxyadenosine, guanosine, 2'-deoxyguanosine, cytidine, 2'-deoxycytidine, uridine and 2'-deoxythymidine. As such, this group excludes "minor" nucleosides that may be found in tRNA or in other nucleic acids.

The invention also provides methods of for specifically cleaving preselected RNA. These methods include contacting the RNA with a compound that includes at least twelve ribofuranosyl nucleosides subunits joined in a sequence which is specifically hybridizable with the preselected RNA. The nucleoside subunits are joined by internucleoside bonds that are stable to degradation as compared to phosphodiester bonds. The compound has at least one segment that includes at least one modified nucleoside subunit, which modified nucleoside subunit is modified to improve at least one of pharmacokinetic binding, absorption, distribution or clearance properties of the compound; affinity or specificity of the compound to target RNA; or modification of the charge of the compound, compared to an unmodified compound. The compound additionally includes a further segment having at least four ribonucleoside subunits.

The invention also provides methods for treating an organism having a disease characterized by the undesired production of a protein. These methods include contacting the organism with an oligomeric compound of the invention having a sequence of nucleoside subunits capable of specifically hybridizing with a complementary strand of ribonucleic acid with at least one of the nucleoside subunits being functionalized to modify one of more properties of the oligomeric compounds compared to native RNA. The compound further includes a plurality of the nucleoside subunits having 2'-hydroxyl-pentofuranosyl sugar moieties.

Further in accordance with the present invention, there are provided compositions including a pharmaceutically effective amount of an oligomeric compound having a sequence of nucleoside subunits capable of specifically hybridizing with a complementary strand of RNA and wherein at least one of the nucleoside subunits is modified to improve at least one of pharmacokinetic binding, absorption, distribution or clearance properties of the compound; affinity or specificity of said compound to said target RNA; or modification of the charge of said compound, compared to an unmodified compound. In such compounds, a plurality of the nucleoside subunits have 2'-hydroxyl-pentofuranosyl sugar moieties. The compositions further include a pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier.

The present invention also provides mammalian ribonucleases, isolatable from human T24 cells, other cell lines, and rat tissues, that degrade RNA in an oligoribonucleotide:RNA duplex. Such a ribonuclease is referred to herein as a dsRNase, wherein "ds" indicates the RNase's specificity for certain double-stranded RNA substrates. Useful substrates for such dsRNases are also herein provided, as well as affinity matrices comprising such substrates.

Methods are also provided for in vitro modification of a sequence-specific target RNA including contacting a test solution containing a dsRNase enzyme, i.e., a double stranded RNase enzyme, and said target RNA with an oligomeric compound. The oligomeric compound has a sequence of nucleoside subunits capable of specifically hybridizing to a complementary strand of the nucleic acid, where at least one of the nucleoside subunits is functionalized to increase the

binding affinity or binding specificity of the oligoribonucleotide to the complementary strand of nucleic acid, and where a plurality of the nucleoside subunits have 2'-hydroxyl-pentofuranosyl sugar moieties.

There are also provided methods of concurrently enhancing hybridization and/or dsRNase enzyme activation in an organism that includes contacting the organism with an oligomeric compound having a sequence of nucleoside subunits capable of specifically hybridizing to a complementary strand of target RNA. At least one of the nucleoside subunits is modified to improve at least one of pharmacokinetic binding, absorption, distribution or clearance properties of the compound; affinity or specificity of said compound to said target RNA; or modification of the charge of said compound, compared to an unmodified compound. Again, a plurality of the nucleoside subunits have 2'-hydroxy-pentofuranosyl sugar moieties.

The invention further provides diagnostic methods for detecting the presence or absence of abnormal RNA molecules, or abnormal or inappropriate expression of normal RNA molecules in organisms or cells. The invention further provides research reagents for modulating enzyme activity including dsRNase activity in in vitro solutions.

#### BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 schematically depicts certain illustrative chimeric oligomeric compounds of the invention wherein open squares represent 2'-methoxy modified ribonucleotides, filled circles represent 2'-hydroxyl ribonucleotides and phosphorothioate linkages are utilized through the compounds shown in the figure.

FIG. 2 depicts Ha-ras mRNA levels in cells treated with full 2'-methoxy or chimeric RNA gapmer oligonucleotides. Northern blot analyses for Ha-ras mRNA levels in T24 cells treated with the indicated doses of full 2'-methoxy oligonucleotide (panel 2A) or 3 gap oligoribonucleotide (panel 2C) for 24 hrs. are shown. The upper band is the signal for Ha-ras, this signal was normalized to that obtained for G3PDH (lower band), relative Ha-ras levels were determined and are presented graphically (panels 2C-2D). Neither oligonucleotide treatment reduced Ha-ras mRNA levels.

FIG. 3 shows Northern blot analyses of T24 cell treated as in FIG. 2 except with chimeric RNA gapmer oligonucleotides containing either a 5, 7 or 9 ribonucleotide gap or a full ribonucleotide molecule (left panels 3A, 3B, 3C and 3D, respectively); cells were also treated with a control oligoribonucleotide that contains four mismatched base pairs to the Ha-ras mRNA sequence (left panel 3E). Ha-ras signals were normalized to that of G3PDH and relative Ha-ras levels are shown graphically (right panels).

In FIG. 4, the effect of T24 cytosolic extracts and RNase H on duplexes in vitro are shown. A 17 base pair duplex consisting of the Ha-ras targeted 9 RNA gapmer oligonucleotide annealed to a <sup>32</sup>P-labeled RNA complement was incubated with 3 ug of T24 cytosolic protein fraction for the indicated times at 37° C., the reaction was stopped and products were resolved on a denaturing polyacrylamide gel. Digestion products (arrows) indicate that cleavage of the duplex is restricted to the RNA:RNA region (see schematic of duplex, far right).

FIG. 5 shows the same 9 RNA gapmer oligonucleotide: RNA duplex as in FIG. 4, incubated with or without *E. coli* RNase H (- and +, respectively). The lack of digestion products indicates that this duplex is not a substrate for RNase H. Duplexes consisting of <sup>32</sup>P-labeled RNA annealed to either a full oligodeoxynucleotide (middle panel) or 9 DNA gapmer

oligonucleotide (left panel) are substrates for cleavage by RNase H and thus generate digestion products as expected (arrows).

FIG. 6 depicts SDS-polyacrylamide gel electrophoretic analysis of the concentrated rat liver active fractions after size exclusion chromatography. MW, molecular weight markers in kilodaltons (kD). Fraction 3 (lane 4), having an apparent molecular weight in the range of about 35 to about 100 kD, with much of the material having an apparent molecular weight in the range 50 to about 80 kD, had the greatest amount of dsRNase activity.

FIG. 7 shows analysis of products of digestion of dsRNA substrates by native polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis. Antisense and sense oligonucleotides were preannealed and incubated with cellular extracts and purified dsRNases as described herein. Lane 1, untreated "sense" strand RNA; lane 2, "sense" strand RNA treated with 0.02 units RNase V1; remaining lanes: dsRNA substrates treated with 0.02 (lane 3) and 0.002 (lane 4) units of RNase V1, with unpurified nuclear extract for 0 minutes (lane 5) or 240 minutes (lane 6), with unpurified nuclear extract for 240 minutes without  $Mg^{++}$  (lane 7), with unpurified cytosolic extract for 240 minutes (lane 8), with ion exchange purified cytosolic extract for 240 minutes in the presence (lane 9) or absence (lane 10) of  $Mg^{++}$ , and with ion exchange/gel filtration purified cytosolic extract for 240 minutes in the presence (lane 9) or absence (lane 10) of  $Mg^{++}$ .

FIG. 8 shows analysis of products of digestion of dsRNA substrates by denaturing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis. Lane 1, "sense" strand RNA treated with  $5 \times 10^{-3}$  units of RNase A; lane 2, "sense" strand RNA treated with 0.02 units RNase V1; lanes 3-9: dsRNA substrates treated with 0.02 (lane 3) and 0.002 (lane 4) units of RNase V1, with unpurified nuclear extract for 0 minutes (lane 5) or 240 minutes (lane 6), with unpurified cytosolic extract for 240 minutes (lane 7), with ion exchange purified cytosolic extract for 240 minutes (lane 8), and with ion exchange/gel filtration purified cytosolic extract for 240 minutes (lane 9). Lane 10, base hydrolysis ladder.

#### DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

While not wishing to be bound by theory, it is now believed that by the use of certain chemically modified oligomeric compounds, one can exploit certain enzymatic activities in eukaryotic cells, including human cells, resulting from the unexpected interaction of these compounds with a target RNA strand to form double-stranded RNA like structures that are cleaved by certain enzymes. Heretofore, such activity has not been recognized nor exploited in eukaryotic systems. It has now been found that the oligomeric compounds of the invention have certain RNA like features that allow them to form a double stranded structure with a targeted RNA region and this double stranded structure is subsequently degraded by eukaryotic dsRNases, i.e. double-stranded RNase enzymes, in a cell or test solution. Using T24 human bladder carcinoma cells as an illustrative eukaryotic cellular system, it has been demonstrated that this activity is present at comparable levels in both the nuclear and cytoplasmic fractions.

In certain illustrative procedures provided herein to illustrate this invention, in common with some other known nuclease activities, it has been found that this activity leaves 5' phosphate and 3' hydroxyl groups after cleavage of the RNA substrate. This generation of 5' phosphate, 3' hydroxyl termini is a feature in common with several other nucleases that recognize double-stranded nucleic acid molecules,

including RNase HI and II that cleave the RNA component of a DNA:RNA duplex in *E.coli.*, RNase III which catalyses the hydrolysis of high molecular weight double stranded RNA and mediates degradation of sense-antisense duplexes, and RNase V1.

Many components of mRNA degradation systems have been conserved between prokaryotes and eukaryotes. It has now been found that like prokaryotic organisms, in which RNase III carries out the degradation of sense-antisense hybrids to regulate expression of some genes, human cells have conserved an activity capable of performing a similar role. In addition to other uses including therapeutic and diagnostic uses, by virtue of this activity the compounds of this invention can be used as research reagents to assist in understanding how human cells use endogenously expressed antisense transcripts to modulate gene expression.

The vast majority of antisense oligonucleotides used experimentally or currently being tested in the clinic in humans are modified oligodeoxynucleotides. It has been demonstrated that the heteroduplex formed between such oligodeoxynucleotide antisense compounds and their target RNA is recognized by an intracellular nuclease, RNase H, that cleaves only the RNA strand of this duplex. Although RNase H mediated degradation of target RNA has proven a useful mechanism, it has certain limitations. RNase H is highly sensitive to structural modifications made to the antisense oligonucleotides and thus most of the modifications designed to improve the therapeutic properties such as increased affinity, increased nuclease resistance and greater cellular permeability have resulted in oligonucleotides that do not support cleavage by RNase H. Another limitation to RNase H as a terminating mechanism of antisense action is the fact that the oligonucleotides must be DNA 'like', and in being DNA 'like', such oligonucleotides have inherently low affinity to their target RNA. Strategies designed to circumvent this low affinity include the design of "gapmer" oligonucleotides that are composed of a stretch of high affinity chemically modified oligonucleotides on the 5' and 3' ends (the wings) with a stretch of unmodified deoxyoligonucleotides in the center (the gap). DNA gapmers, i.e., oligodeoxynucleotides gapmers, have significantly higher affinities for their target than oligodeoxynucleotides, however, depending on the size of the DNA gap, RNase H activity has been shown to be compromised.

In using RNase H as a termination mechanism via RNA degradation, the cellular localization and tissue distribution of RNase H must also be considered. RNase H activity is primarily localized to the nucleus although it has been detected in the cytoplasm at lower levels. Most of a given mRNA is found in the cytoplasm of cells, therefore the ideal activity to be exploited as a terminating mechanism would be one with high levels in both the nucleus and the cytoplasm. RNase H activity also is highly variable from cell line to cell line or between tissues, thus a given disease state may not be a good candidate for RNA degradation only because the target tissue has insufficient RNase H activity. It is clear that alternative terminating mechanisms for degrading target RNA are highly desirable.

Among other uses, the activity that has now been recognized can now be exploited as an alternative terminating mechanism to RNase H for antisense therapeutics. It has been found that in using RNA-like oligonucleotides that have high affinity for their target and thus higher potency than DNA-like oligonucleotides, activity can be expressed in human cells. The presence of the activity in both the cytoplasm and the nucleus allows the compounds of the invention to be used to

inhibit many RNA processing events from nuclear pre-mRNA splicing and transport to degradation of mature transcript in the cytoplasm.

To illustrate this invention and to compare it to other known antisense mechanisms, e.g. RNase H, the dsRNase activity induced by the compounds of the invention has been examined by targeting it to codon 12 of Ha-ras. As described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,297,248, corresponding to Ser. No. 08/297,248, and its related application International Publication Number WO 92/22651, published Dec. 23, 1992, both commonly assigned with this application, the entire contents of which are herein incorporated by reference, the ras oncogenes are members of a gene family that encode related proteins that are localized to the inner face of the plasma membrane and have been shown to be highly conserved at the amino acid level, to bind GTP with high affinity and specificity, and to possess GTPase activity. Although the cellular function of ras gene products is unknown, their biochemical properties, along with their significant sequence homology with a class of signal-transducing proteins, known as GTP binding proteins, or G proteins, suggest that ras gene products play a fundamental role in basic cellular regulatory functions related to the transduction of extracellular signals across plasma membranes.

Three ras genes, designated H-ras, K-ras, and N-ras, have been identified in the mammalian genome. Mammalian ras genes acquire transformation-inducing properties by single point mutations within their coding sequences. Mutations in naturally occurring ras oncogenes have been localized to codons 12, 13, and 61. The most commonly detected activating ras mutation found in human tumors is in codon 12 of the H-ras gene in which a base change from GGC to GTC results in a glycine-to-valine substitution in the GTPase regulatory domain of the ras protein product. This single amino acid change is thought to abolish normal control of ras protein function, thereby converting a normally regulated cell protein to one that is continuously active. It is believed that such deregulation of normal ras protein function is responsible for the transformation from normal to malignant growth.

While for illustrative purposes, the compounds of the invention are targeted to ras RNA, it is of course recognized that a host of other RNAs also are suitable as the target RNA. Thus the compounds of the invention can be used to modulate the expression of any suitable target RNA that is naturally present in cells or any target RNA in vitro.

The ras target site utilized for illustrative purposes is one the most RNase H sensitive oligonucleotide sites that has been identified in the literature. The selective inhibition of mutated genes such as the ras oncogene necessitates hybridization of a regulatory compound in the coding region of the mRNA. This requires either a high affinity interaction between such a compound and ras mRNA to prevent displacement of the compound by the polysome, or rapid degradation of the target mRNA by a given terminating mechanism. Again while not wishing to be bound by theory, the RNA like compounds of the invention, have both inherently high affinity and are able to take advantage of the cellular dsRNase activity.

In accordance with the objects of this invention, novel oligomeric compounds that bind to a target RNA strand and that are substrates for dsRNase enzymes are provided. The oligomeric compounds of the invention include oligoribonucleotides, oligoribonucleosides and other oligomeric compounds having a linear sequence of linked ribonucleoside subunits incorporated therein. Such other oligomeric compounds will include chimeric structures formed between PNA (peptide nucleic acid) segments and linked ribonucleo-

ides. Thus for the purposes of this specification, the term "oligomeric compound" is meant to be inclusive of the terms oligoribonucleotides and oligoribonucleosides, either used singly or in combination, as well as other oligomeric compounds including chimeric compounds formed between PNA segments (and other surrogate nucleoside components) and linked ribonucleoside segments. As used in this specification and the claims attached hereto, in one sense the term oligomeric compound is used to represent oligoribonucleotides, in a further sense to represent oligoribonucleosides, in even a further sense to represent mixtures of oligoribonucleotides and oligoribonucleosides and in other instances to indicated further chimeric compounds such as the above identified PNA chimeric compounds.

The oligoribonucleotides and oligoribonucleosides of the invention are assembled from a plurality of nucleoside subunits. In certain preferred oligoribonucleotide or oligoribonucleosides of the invention at least one of the nucleoside subunits bear a substituent group that increases the binding affinity of the oligoribonucleotide or oligoribonucleoside for a complementary strand of nucleic acid. Additionally, at least some of the nucleoside subunits comprise 2'-hydroxylpentofuranosyl sugar moieties.

For cellular use, for an oligonucleotide to be particularly useful, the oligonucleotide must be reasonably stable to nucleases in order to survive in cells for a time period sufficient for it to interact with target nucleic acids of the cells. Therefore, in certain embodiments of the invention, specific nucleoside subunits or internucleoside linkages are functionalized or selected to increase the nuclease resistance of the oligoribonucleotide or oligoribonucleoside. However, for non-cellular uses, such as use of oligomeric compounds of the invention as research reagents and as diagnostic agents, such nuclease stability may not be necessary.

In determining the extent of binding affinity of a first nucleic acid to a complementary nucleic acid, the relative ability of the first nucleic acid to bind to the complementary nucleic acid may be compared by determining the melting temperature of a particular hybridization complex. The melting temperature ( $T_m$ ), a characteristic physical property of double stranded nucleotides, denotes the temperature (in degrees centigrade) at which 50% helical (hybridized) versus coil (unhybridized) forms are present.  $T_m$  is measured by using the UV spectrum to determine the formation and breakdown (melting) of the hybridization complex. Base stacking which occurs during hybridization is accompanied by a reduction in UV absorption (hypochromicity). Consequently, a reduction in UV absorption indicates a higher  $T_m$ . The higher the  $T_m$ , the greater the strength of the bonds between the strands.

It has been found in the present invention that the binding affinity of oligoribonucleotides and oligoribonucleosides of the present invention can be increased by incorporating substituent groups in the nucleoside subunits of these compounds. Preferred substituent groups are 2' substituent groups, i.e. substituent groups located at the 2' position of the pentofuranosyl sugar moieties of the nucleoside subunits of the compounds of the present invention. Presently preferred substituent groups include fluoro, alkoxy, aminoalkoxy, allyloxy, imidazolylalkoxy and polyethylene glycol. Alkoxy and aminoalkoxy groups generally include lower alkyl groups, particularly  $C_1$ - $C_9$  alkyl. Polyethylene glycols are of the structure  $(O-CH_2-CH_2)_n-O$ -alkyl. A particularly preferred substituent group is a polyethylene glycol substituent of the formula  $(-O-CH_2-CH_2)_n-O$ -alkyl, wherein  $n=1$  and alkyl= $CH_3$ . This modification has been shown to increase

both affinity of a oligonucleotide for its target and nuclease resistance of an oligonucleotide.

A further particularly useful 2'-substituent group for increasing the binding affinity is the 2'-fluoro group. In a published study (Synthesis and Biophysical Studies of 2'-dRIBO-F Modified oligonucleotides, Conference On Nucleic Acid Therapeutics, Clearwater, Fla., Jan. 13, 1991) an increase in binding affinity of 1.6° C. per substituted nucleoside subunit was reported for a 15-mer phosphodiester oligonucleotide having 2'-fluoro substituent groups on five of the nucleoside subunits of the oligonucleotide. When 11 of the nucleoside subunits of the oligonucleotide bore 2'-fluoro substituent groups, the binding affinity increased to 1.8° C. per substituted nucleoside subunit. In this study, the 15-mer phosphodiester oligonucleotide was derivatized to the corresponding phosphorothioate analog. When the 15-mer phosphodiester oligonucleotide was compared to its phosphorothioate analog, the phosphorothioate analog had a binding affinity of only about 66% of that of the 15-mer phosphodiester oligonucleotide. Stated otherwise, binding affinity was lost in derivatizing the oligonucleotide to its phosphorothioate analog. However, when 2'-fluoro substituents were located on 11 of the nucleosides subunits of the 15-mer phosphorothioate oligonucleotide, the binding affinity of the 2'-substituent groups more than overcame the decrease noted by derivatizing the 15-mer oligonucleotide to its phosphorothioate analog. In this compound, i.e. the 15-mer phosphorothioate oligonucleotide having 11 nucleoside subunits substituted with 2'-fluoro substituent groups, the binding affinity was increased to 2.5° C. per substituent group.

For use in preparing the nucleoside structural subunits of the compounds of the invention, suitable nucleobases for incorporation in these nucleoside subunits include purines and pyrimidines such as adenine, guanine, cytosine, uridine, and thymine, as well as other synthetic and natural nucleobases such as xanthine, hypoxanthine, 2-aminoadenine, 6-methyl and other alkyl derivatives of adenine and guanine, 2-propyl and other alkyl derivatives of adenine and guanine, 5-halouracil and cytosine, 5-propynyl uracil and cytosine, 6-azo uracil, cytosine and thymine, 5-uracil (pseudouracil), 4-thiouracil, 8-halo, amino, thiol, thioalkyl, hydroxyl and other 8-substituted adenines and guanines, 5-trifluoromethyl and other 5-substituted uracils and cytosines, 7-methylguanine. Further purines and pyrimidines include those disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 3,687,808, those disclosed in the *Concise Encyclopedia Of Polymer Science And Engineering*, pages 858-859, Kroschwitz, J. I., ed. John Wiley & Sons, 1990, and those disclosed by Englisch et al., *Angewandte Chemie, International Edition*, 1991, 30, 613. Certain of these nucleobases are particularly useful for increasing the binding affinity of the oligomeric compounds of the invention. These include 5-substituted pyrimidines, 6-azapyrimidines and N-2, N-6 and O-6 substituted purines, including 2-aminopropyladenine, 5-propynyluracil and 5-propynylcytosine. Other modified pyrimidine and purine bases are also expected to increase the binding affinity of oligomeric compounds to a complementary strand of nucleic acid.

Preferred oligoribonucleotides and oligoribonucleosides in accordance with this invention preferably comprise from about 5 to about 50 nucleoside subunits. In the context of this invention it is understood that this encompasses non-naturally occurring oligomers as hereinbefore described, having 5 to 50 nucleoside subunits. It is more preferred that the oligoribonucleotides and oligoribonucleosides of the present invention comprise from about 15 to about 25 nucleoside subunits. As will be appreciated, a "nucleoside subunit" is a nucleobase and sugar or sugar surrogate combination suitably bound to

adjacent subunits through phosphorus linkages in oligoribonucleotides and through non-phosphorus linkages in oligoribonucleosides. In this context, the term "nucleoside unit" is used interchangeably with the term "nucleoside unit" or "nucleoside." The oligoribonucleotides of the invention have their nucleoside subunits connected by phosphorus linkages including phosphodiester, phosphorothioate, 3'-(or -5') deoxy-3'-(or -5')thio-phosphorothioate, phosphorodithioate, phosphoroselenates, 3'-(or -5')deoxy phosphinates, borano phosphates, 3'-(or -5')deoxy-3'-(or 5'-)amino phosphoramidates, hydrogen phosphonates, borano phosphate esters, phosphoramidates, alkyl or aryl phosphonates and phosphotriester phosphorus linkages. Whereas the oligoribonucleosides of the invention have their nucleoside subunits connected by carbonate, carbamate, silyl, sulfur, sulfonate, sulfonamide, formacetal, thioformacetyl, oxime, methyleneimino, methylenemethylimino, methylenehydrazo, methylenedimethylhydrazo and methyleneoxymethylimino linkages.

In order to elicit a dsRNase response within the total overall sequence length of the oligomeric compounds of the invention there will be a segment or subsequence of greater than three, but preferably, four, five or more consecutively linked 2'-hydroxyl-pentofuranosyl-containing nucleoside subunits. It is presently preferred to incorporate the 2'-hydroxyl-pentofuranosyl-containing nucleoside subsequence in the oligomeric compound such that further subsequences or segments of oligomeric compound are located on either side of the 2'-hydroxyl-pentofuranosyl-containing nucleoside subsequence. In such a construction, the 2'-hydroxyl-pentofuranosyl containing nucleoside subsequence is also referred to as the "central" or "gap" region or segment and the other nucleoside subsequences or segments are referred to as "flanking" or "wing" regions or segments. Thus the "gap" region is flanked on either side by "wings." Other constructions are also possible, including locating the 2'-hydroxyl-pentofuranosyl containing nucleoside subsequence at either the 3' or the 5' terminus of the oligomeric compound of the invention. These other constructions can be considered as "open" gapped structures, i.e., the gap region is open on the end (either 3' or 5' end) of the oligomeric compound.

The oligoribonucleotides and oligoribonucleosides used in accordance with this invention may be conveniently and routinely made through the well-known technique of solid phase synthesis, see for example "Oligonucleotide synthesis, a practical approach", Ed. M. J. Gait, IRL Press, 1984; "Oligonucleotides and Analogues, A Practical Approach", Ed. F. Eckstein, IRL Press, 1991 (especially Chapter 1, Modern machine-aided methods of oligodeoxyribonucleotide synthesis, Chapter 2, Oligoribonucleotide synthesis, Chapter 3, 2'-O-Methyloligoribonucleotides: synthesis and applications, Chapter 4, Phosphorothioate oligonucleotides, Chapter 5, Synthesis of oligonucleotide phosphorodithioates, Chapter 6, Synthesis of oligo-2'-deoxyribonucleoside methylphosphonates, and Chapter 7, Oligodeoxynucleotides containing modified bases. Other particularly useful synthetic procedures, reagents, blocking groups and reaction conditions are described in Martin, P., *Helv. Chim. Acta*, 1995, 78, 486-504; Beaucage, S. L. and Iyer, R. P., *Tetrahedron*, 1992, 48, 2223-2311 and Beaucage, S. L. and Iyer, R. P., *Tetrahedron*, 1993, 49, 6123-6194, or references referred to therein.

Equipment for oligonucleotide and oligonucleoside synthesis is sold by several vendors including Applied Biosystems. Various amidite reagents are also commercially available, including 2'-O-methyl amidites and 2'-O-hydroxyl amidites. Any other means for such synthesis may also be employed. The actual synthesis of the oligonucleotides is

well within the talents of those skilled in the art. It is also well known to use similar techniques to prepare other oligonucleotides such as the phosphorothioates and alkylated derivatives. It is also well known to use similar techniques and commercially available modified amidites and controlled-pore glass (CPG) products such as biotin, fluorescein, acridine or psoralen-modified amidites and/or CPG (available from Glen Research, Sterling Va.) to synthesize fluorescently labeled, biotinylated or other conjugated oligonucleotides.

In a further embodiment, the present invention is drawn to a mammalian ribonuclease isolatable from human T24 cells, and other cell lines, that degrades RNA in an antisense oligoribonucleotide:RNA duplex. The ribonuclease is referred to herein as a dsRNase, wherein "ds" indicates the RNase's specificity for double-stranded RNA substrates. Antisense oligodeoxynucleotides containing 2'-methoxy modified sugar moieties bind to their cellular mRNA targets with high affinity but the resulting ["DNA-like"]: [RNA] duplexes are not substrates for nucleolytic degradation in T24 cells. As detailed in the Examples, 2'-methoxy phosphorothioate antisense oligonucleotides targeting codon 12 of Ha-Ras mRNA were modified by substituting 2'-methoxy nucleotides with a stretch of ribonucleotides in the center of the oligonucleotide to form 2'-methoxy/ribo/2'-methoxy chimeric or "gapmer" oligonucleotides, with the phosphorothioate linkage maintained throughout the molecules. These "RNA-like" gapmer oligonucleotides bind to their cellular mRNA target with an affinity comparable to that of the full 2'-methoxy oligodeoxynucleotide, but, unlike the ["DNA-like"]: [RNA] duplexes, the resultant ["RNA-like"]: [RNA] duplexes are substrates for nucleolytic degradation in T24 cells. Degradation of the [antisense "RNA-like" gapmer oligonucleotide]: [Ha-Ras mRNA] duplex is dependent on the number of ribonucleotides incorporated into the antisense molecule. A 17 base pair 9 RNA gapmer oligonucleotide:RNA duplex is not a substrate for RNase H cleavage, but is a substrate for cleavage by an dsRNase of the invention in T24 cellular lysates. Furthermore, the cleavage sites seen with T24 cellular lysates are localized to the RNA:RNA portion of the duplex and are not seen in the 2'-methoxy:RNA portion of the duplex. Cleavage of the duplex by the dsRNase of the invention produces 5'-phosphate and 3'-hydroxyl termini.

Compounds of the invention can be utilized as diagnostics, therapeutics and as research reagents and kits. They can be utilized in pharmaceutical compositions by adding an effective amount of a compound of the invention to a suitable pharmaceutically acceptable diluent or carrier. They further can be used for treating organisms having a disease characterized by the undesired production of a protein. The organism can be contacted with a compound of the invention having a sequence that is capable of specifically hybridizing with a strand of target nucleic acid that codes for the undesirable protein.

The formulation of therapeutic compositions and their subsequent administration is believed to be within the skill of those in the art. In general, for therapeutics, a patient in need of such therapy is administered a compound in accordance with the invention, commonly in a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, in doses ranging from 0.01  $\mu\text{g}$  to 100 g per kg of body weight depending on the age of the patient and the severity of the disease state being treated. Further, the treatment regimen may last for a period of time which will vary depending upon the nature of the particular disease, its severity and the overall condition of the patient, and may extend from once daily to once every 20 years. Following treatment, the patient is monitored for changes in his/her condition and for alleviation of the symptoms of the disease state. The

dosage of the compound may either be increased in the event the patient does not respond significantly to current dosage levels, or the dose may be decreased if an alleviation of the symptoms of the disease state is observed, or if the disease state has been ablated.

In some cases it may be more effective to treat a patient with a compound of the invention in conjunction with other traditional therapeutic modalities. For example, a patient being treated for a viral disease may be administered a compound of the invention in conjunction with a known antiviral agent, or a patient with atherosclerosis may be treated with a compound of the invention following angioplasty to prevent reocclusion of the treated arteries.

Following successful treatment, it may be desirable to have the patient undergo maintenance therapy to prevent the recurrence of the disease state, wherein the compound of the invention is administered in maintenance doses, ranging from 0.01  $\mu\text{g}$  to 100 g per kg of body weight, once or more daily, to once every 20 years.

The pharmaceutical compositions of the present invention may be administered in a number of ways depending upon whether local or systemic treatment is desired and upon the area to be treated. Administration may be topical (including ophthalmic, vaginal, rectal, intranasal, transdermal), oral or parenteral. Parenteral administration includes intravenous drip, subcutaneous, intraperitoneal or intramuscular injection, or intrathecal or intraventricular administration.

Formulations for topical administration may include transdermal patches, ointments, lotions, creams, gels, drops, suppositories, sprays, liquids and powders. Conventional pharmaceutical carriers, aqueous, powder or oily bases, thickeners and the like may be necessary or desirable. Coated condoms, gloves and the like may also be useful.

Compositions for oral administration include powders or granules, suspensions or solutions in water or non-aqueous media, capsules, sachets or tablets. Thickeners, flavoring agents, diluents, emulsifiers, dispersing aids or binders may be desirable.

Compositions for intrathecal or intraventricular administration may include sterile aqueous solutions which may also contain buffers, diluents and other suitable additives.

Formulations for parenteral administration may include sterile aqueous solutions which may also contain buffers, diluents and other suitable additives.

Dosing is dependent on severity and responsiveness of the disease condition to be treated, with the course of treatment lasting from several days to several months, or until a cure is effected or a diminution of disease state is achieved. Optimal dosing schedules can be calculated from measurements of drug accumulation in the body of the patient. Persons of ordinary skill can easily determine optimum dosages, dosing methodologies and repetition rates. Optimum dosages may vary depending on the relative potency of individual compounds, and can generally be estimated based on  $EC_{50}$ s found to be effective in *in vitro* and *in vivo* animal models. In general, dosage is from 0.01  $\mu\text{g}$  to 100 g per kg of body weight, and may be given once or more daily, weekly, monthly or yearly, or even once every 2 to 20 years.

Such treatment can be practiced in a variety of organisms ranging from unicellular prokaryotic and eukaryotic organisms to multicellular eukaryotic organisms. Any organism that utilizes DNA-RNA transcription or RNA-protein translation as a fundamental part of its hereditary, metabolic or cellular machinery is susceptible to such diagnostic, therapeutic and/or prophylactic treatment. Seemingly diverse organisms such as bacteria, yeast, protozoa, algae, plant and higher animal forms, including warm-blooded animals, can

be treated in this manner. Further, since each of the cells of multicellular eukaryotes also includes both DNA-RNA transcription and RNA-protein translation as an integral part of their cellular activity, such therapeutics and/or diagnostics can also be practiced on such cellular populations. Furthermore, many of the organelles, e.g. mitochondria and chloroplasts, of eukaryotic cells also include transcription and translation mechanisms. As such, single cells, cellular populations or organelles also can be included within the definition of organisms that are capable of being treated with the therapeutic or diagnostic compounds of the invention. As used herein, therapeutics is meant to include eradication of a disease state, killing of an organism, e.g. bacterial, protozoan or other infection, or control of aberrant or undesirable cellular growth or expression.

In the context of this invention, "target RNA" shall mean any RNA that can hybridize with a complementary nucleic acid like compound. Further in the context of this invention, "hybridization" shall mean hydrogen bonding, which may be Watson-Crick, Hoogsteen or reversed Hoogsteen hydrogen bonding, between complementary nucleobases. "Complementary" as used herein, refers to the capacity for precise pairing between two nucleobases. For example, adenine and thymine are complementary nucleobases which pair through the formation of hydrogen bonds. "Complementary" and "specifically hybridizable," as used herein, refer to precise pairing or sequence complementarity between a first and a second nucleic acid-like oligomers containing nucleoside subunits. For example, if a nucleobase at a certain position of the first nucleic acid is capable of hydrogen bonding with a nucleobase at the same position of the second nucleic acid, then the first nucleic acid and the second nucleic acid are considered to be complementary to each other at that position. The first and second nucleic acids are complementary to each other when a sufficient number of corresponding positions in each molecule are occupied by nucleobases which can hydrogen bond with each other. Thus, "specifically hybridizable" and "complementary" are terms which are used to indicate a sufficient degree of complementarity such that stable and specific binding occurs between a compound of the invention and a target RNA molecule. It is understood that an oligomeric compound of the invention need not be 100% complementary to its target RNA sequence to be specifically hybridizable. An oligomeric compound is specifically hybridizable when binding of the oligomeric compound to the target RNA molecule interferes with the normal function of the target RNA to cause a loss of utility, and there is a sufficient degree of complementarity to avoid non-specific binding of the oligomeric compound to non-target sequences under conditions in which specific binding is desired, i.e. under physiological conditions in the case of in vivo assays or therapeutic treatment, or in the case of in vitro assays, under conditions in which the assays are performed.

The following examples and procedures illustrate the present invention and are not intended to limit the same. In illustrating the invention, Example 1 identifies certain commercial nucleoside amidites and other additional nucleoside amidites that are useful for the preparation of certain illustrative oligoribonucleotide or oligoribonucleoside compounds of the invention. Examples 2 through 5 illustrate the preparation of further nucleoside amidites use in preparing other illustrative oligoribonucleotide or oligoribonucleoside compounds of the invention. Example 6 illustrates the preparation of oligoribonucleotide compounds of the invention. Example 7 illustrates the preparation of oligoribonucleoside compounds of the invention. Examples 8 through 16 illustrate the preparation of chimeric oligomeric compounds of the inven-

tion including certain "gapmers," i.e., compounds having "gap" and "wing" constructions. Examples 17 through 18 illustrate certain useful aspects of the compounds of the invention. Examples 19 through 28 illustrate the identification, characterization and purification of the double-stranded ribonucleases (dsRNases) of the invention. Example 29 illustrates affinity columns incorporating the dsRNase substrates of the invention.

In the illustrative examples, several different types of "gapmers" are exemplified. These include a first type wherein the "gap" segment of linked nucleosides is positioned between 5' and 3' "wing" segments of linked nucleosides and a second "open end" type wherein the "gap" segment is located at either the 3' or the 5' terminus of the oligomeric compound. In the illustrative examples, for all chimeric oligoribonucleotides and oligoribonucleosides, unless otherwise indicated, 2'-O-methyl nucleosides are utilized in the "wing" segments and 2'-OH nucleosides are utilized in the "gap" segments of the respective oligoribonucleotides or oligoribonucleosides.

For the purposes of the illustrative examples the following short hand conventions are used. Structure set forth in brackets, i.e. [ ], are nucleoside abbreviations, while structures set forth following a slash mark, i.e. /, are linkers used to connect the nucleosides, i.e. backbone structures that link the nucleosides together in either oligoribonucleotide or oligoribonucleoside compounds.

Using this nomenclature, the following abbreviations are used for phosphate linkages between nucleosides: PO for phosphodiester; PS for phosphorothioate, P2S for phosphorodithioate, PSe for phosphoroselenates, PMe for methyl phosphonate, POMe for methyl phosphotriester, PN for phosphoramidate, 3'NPN for 3'-deoxy-3'-amino phosphoramidate, PI for phosphinate, MePS for alkylphosphonothioate, BP for borano phosphate are used. For non-phosphate linkages between nucleosides the abbreviations used are: MMI for methylenemethylimino, MDH for methylenedimethylhydrazo, FA for formacetal, TFA for thioformacetal, ETO for ethylene oxide and amide-3 for methylenecarbonylamino. 2'-OH is utilized as an abbreviation for unmodified ribo sugars, i.e. pentoribofuranosyl sugars. For modified nucleosides the abbreviations used are: 2'-O-alkyl for general alkyl groups at the 2' position of a pentoribofuranosyl moiety with specific alkyl being noted as 2'-O-Me, 2'-O-Et, 2'-O-Pr and 2'-O-EtOMe for methyl, ethyl, propyl and methoxyethyl, respectively; 2'-F for a fluoro moiety at the 2' position of a pentoribofuranosyl moiety, Mod-Purine for a purine nucleobase substitution as, for example, per the disclosure of U.S. Pat. No. 5,459,255 or; and Mod-Pyr for a pyrimidine nucleobase substitution as, for example, per the disclosure of U.S. Pat. No. 5,484,908; SS for a sugar surrogate as, for example, per the disclosure of U.S. Pat. No. 5,359,044.

#### EXAMPLE 1

##### Amidites for oligonucleotide/oligonucleoside Synthesis

2'-O-Methyl nucleoside amidites and 2-OH (blocked as 2'-t-butyldimethylsilyl derivative) nucleoside amidites are available from Glen Research, Sterling, Va. Other 2'-O-alkyl substituted nucleoside amidites are prepared as is described in U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,506,351, 5,466,786 or 5,514,786, herein incorporated by reference. Cyclobutyl sugar surrogate compounds are prepared as is described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,359,044, herein incorporated by reference. Pyrrolidine sugar surrogate are prepared as is described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,519,134, herein incorporated by reference. Morpholino sugar surro-

## 19

gates are prepared as is described in U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,142,047 and 5,235,033, herein incorporated by reference, and other related patent disclosures. N-2 substituted purine nucleoside amidites are prepared as is described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,459,255, herein incorporated by reference. 3-Deaza purine nucleoside amidites are prepared as is described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,457,191, herein incorporated by reference. 5,6-Substituted pyrimidine nucleoside amidites are prepared as is described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,614,617, herein incorporated by reference. 5-Propynyl pyrimidine nucleoside amidites are prepared as is described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,484,908, herein incorporated by reference.

## EXAMPLE 2

## 2'-O-(Methoxyethyl) nucleoside amidites

2'-O-Ethyl-O-methyl substituted nucleoside amidites are prepared as follows in Examples 2-a through 2-h or alternately, as per the methods of Martin, P., *Helvetica Chimica Acta*, 1995, 78, 486-504.

## EXAMPLE 2-a

2,2'-Anhydro[1-( $\beta$ -D-arabinofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine]

5-Methyluridine (ribosylthymine, commercially available through Yamasa, Choshi, Japan) (72.0 g, 0.279 M), diphenylcarbonate (90.0 g, 0.420 M) and sodium bicarbonate (2.0 g, 0.024 M) were added to DMF (300 mL). The mixture was heated to reflux, with stirring, allowing the evolved carbon dioxide gas to be released in a controlled manner. After 1 hour, the slightly darkened solution was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting syrup was poured into diethylether (2.5 L), with stirring. The product formed a gum. The ether was decanted and the residue was dissolved in a minimum amount of methanol (ca. 400 mL). The solution was poured into fresh ether (2.5 L) to yield a stiff gum. The ether was decanted and the gum was dried in a vacuum oven (60° C. at 1 mm Hg for 24 h) to give a solid which was crushed to a light tan powder (57 g, 85% crude yield). The NMR spectrum was consistent with the structure, contaminated with phenol as its sodium salt (ca. 5%). The material was used as is for further reactions (or it can be purified further by column chromatography using a gradient of methanol in ethyl acetate (10-25%) to give a white solid, mp 222-4° C.).

## EXAMPLE 2-b

## 2'-O-Methoxyethyl-5-methyluridine

2,2'-Anhydro-5-methyluridine (195 g, 0.81 M), tris(2-methoxyethyl)borate (231 g, 0.98 M) and 2-methoxyethanol (1.2 L) were added to a 2 L stainless steel pressure vessel and placed in a pre-heated oil bath at 160° C. After heating for 48 hours at 155-160° C., the vessel was opened and the solution evaporated to dryness and triturated with MeOH (200 mL). The residue was suspended in hot acetone (1 L). The insoluble salts were filtered, washed with acetone (150 mL) and the filtrate evaporated. The residue (280 g) was dissolved in CH<sub>3</sub>CN (600 mL) and evaporated. A silica gel column (3 kg) was packed in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/acetone/MeOH (20:5:3) containing 0.5% Et<sub>3</sub>NH. The residue was dissolved in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (250 mL) and adsorbed onto silica (150 g) prior to loading onto the column. The product was eluted with the packing solvent to give 160 g (63%) of product. Additional material was obtained by reworking impure fractions.

## 20

## EXAMPLE 2-c

## 2'-O-Methoxyethyl-5'-O-dimethoxytrityl-5-methyluridine

2'-O-Methoxyethyl-5-methyluridine (160 g, 0.506 M) was co-evaporated with pyridine (250 mL) and the dried residue dissolved in pyridine (1.3 L). A first aliquot of dimethoxytrityl chloride (94.3 g, 0.278 M) was added and the mixture stirred at room temperature for one hour. A second aliquot of dimethoxytrityl chloride (94.3 g, 0.278 M) was added and the reaction stirred for an additional one hour. Methanol (170 mL) was then added to stop the reaction. HPLC showed the presence of approximately 70% product. The solvent was evaporated and triturated with CH<sub>3</sub>CN (200 mL). The residue was dissolved in CHCl<sub>3</sub> (1.5 L) and extracted with 2x500 mL of saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and 2x500 mL of saturated NaCl. The organic phase was dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated. 275 g of residue was obtained. The residue was purified on a 3.5 kg silica gel column, packed and eluted with EtOAc/Hexane/Acetone (5:5:1) containing 0.5% Et<sub>3</sub>NH. The pure fractions were evaporated to give 164 g of product. Approximately 20 g additional was obtained from the impure fractions to give a total yield of 183 g (57%).

## EXAMPLE 2-d

## 3'-O-Acetyl-2'-o-methoxyethyl-5'-o-dimethoxytrityl-5-methyluridine

2'-O-Methoxyethyl-5'-O-dimethoxytrityl-5-methyluridine (106 g, 0.167 M), DMF/pyridine (750 mL of a 3:1 mixture prepared from 562 mL of DMF and 188 mL of pyridine) and acetic anhydride (24.38 mL, 0.258 M) were combined and stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The reaction was monitored by tlc by first quenching the tlc sample with the addition of MeOH. Upon completion of the reaction, as judged by tlc, MeOH (50 mL) was added and the mixture evaporated at 35° C. The residue was dissolved in CHCl<sub>3</sub> (800 mL) and extracted with 2x200 mL of saturated sodium bicarbonate and 2x200 mL of saturated NaCl. The water layers were back extracted with 200 mL of CHCl<sub>3</sub>. The combined organics were dried with sodium sulfate and evaporate to give 122 g of residue (approx. 90% product). The residue was purified on a 3.5 kg silica gel column and eluted using EtOAc/Hexane(4:1). Pure product fractions were evaporated to yield 96 g (84%). An additional 1.5 g was recovered from later fractions.

## EXAMPLE 2-e

## 3'-O-Acetyl-2'-O-methoxyethyl-5'-O-dimethoxytrityl-5-methyl-4-triazoleuridine

A first solution was prepared by dissolving 3'-O-acetyl-2'-O-methoxyethyl-5'-O-dimethoxytrityl-5-methyluridine (96 g, 0.144 M) in CH<sub>3</sub>CN (700 mL) and set aside. Triethylamine (189 mL, 1.44 M) was added to a solution of triazole (90 g, 1.3 M) in CH<sub>3</sub>CN (1 L), cooled to -5° C. and stirred for 0.5 h using an overhead stirrer. POCl<sub>3</sub> was added dropwise, over a 30 minute period, to the stirred solution maintained at 0-10° C., and the resulting mixture stirred for an additional 2 hours. The first solution was added dropwise, over a 45 minute period, to the later solution. The resulting reaction mixture was stored overnight in a cold room. Salts were filtered from the reaction mixture and the solution was evaporated. The residue was dissolved in EtOAc (1 L) and the insoluble solids

## 21

were removed by filtration. The filtrate was washed with 1×300 mL of NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and 2×300 mL of saturated NaCl, dried over sodium sulfate and evaporated. The residue was triturated with EtOAc to give the title compound.

## EXAMPLE 2-f

## 2'-O-Methoxyethyl-5'-O-dimethoxytrityl-5-methylcytidine

A solution of 3'-O-acetyl-2'-O-methoxyethyl-5'-O-dimethoxytrityl-5-methyl-4-triazoleuridine (103 g, 0.141 M) in dioxane (500 mL) and NH<sub>4</sub>OH (30 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The dioxane solution was evaporated and the residue azeotroped with MeOH (2×200 mL). The residue was dissolved in MeOH (300 mL) and transferred to a 2 liter stainless steel pressure vessel. MeOH (400 mL) saturated with NH<sub>3</sub> gas was added and the vessel heated to 100° C. for 2 hours (tlc showed complete conversion). The vessel contents were evaporated to dryness and the residue was dissolved in EtOAc (500 mL) and washed once with saturated NaCl (200 mL). The organics were dried over sodium sulfate and the solvent was evaporated to give 85 g (95%) of the title compound.

## EXAMPLE 2-g

N<sup>4</sup>-Benzoyl-2'-O-methoxyethyl-5'-O-dimethoxytrityl-5-methylcytidine

2'-O-Methoxyethyl-5'-O-dimethoxytrityl-5-methylcytidine (85 g, 0.134 M) was dissolved in DMF (800 mL) and benzoic anhydride (37.2 g, 0.165 M) was added with stirring. After stirring for 3 hours, tlc showed the reaction to be approximately 95% complete. The solvent was evaporated and the residue azeotroped with MeOH (200 mL). The residue was dissolved in CHCl<sub>3</sub> (700 mL) and extracted with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (2×300 mL) and saturated NaCl (2×300 mL), dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and evaporated to give a residue (96 g). The residue was chromatographed on a 1.5 kg silica column using EtOAc/Hexane (1:1) containing 0.5% Et<sub>3</sub>NH as the eluting solvent. The pure product fractions were evaporated to give 90 g (90%) of the title compound.

## EXAMPLE 2-h

N<sup>4</sup>-Benzoyl-2'-O-methoxyethyl-5'-O-dimethoxytrityl-5-methylcytidine-3'-amidite

N<sup>4</sup>-Benzoyl-2'-O-methoxyethyl-5'-O-dimethoxytrityl-5-methylcytidine (74 g, 0.10 M) was dissolved in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (1 L). Tetrazole diisopropylamine (7.1 g) and 2-cyanoethoxy-tetra(isopropyl)phosphite (40.5 mL, 0.123 M) were added with stirring, under a nitrogen atmosphere. The resulting mixture was stirred for 20 hours at room temperature (tlc showed the reaction to be 95% complete). The reaction mixture was extracted with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (1×300 mL) and saturated NaCl (3×300 mL). The aqueous washes were back-extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (300 mL), and the extracts were combined, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated. The residue obtained was chromatographed on a 1.5 kg silica column using

## 22

EtOAc/Hexane (3:1) as the eluting solvent. The pure fractions were combined to give 90.6 g (87%) of the title compound.

## EXAMPLE 3

Preparation of long chain, i.e. (C<sub>20</sub>), substituted nucleoside amidites

Synthesis of nucleoside amidites having long chains, e.g. C<sub>20</sub>, substituents at their 2' position is shown in Examples 3-a through 3-c.

## EXAMPLE 3-a

## Synthesis of 2,6-Diamino-9-(2-O-octadecyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl)purine

2,6-Diamino-9-(β-D-ribofuranosyl)purine (50 g, 180 mmol) and sodium hydride (7 g) in DMF (1 L) were heated to boiling for 2 hr. Iodoctadecane (100 g) was added at 150° C. and the reaction mixture allowed to cool to RT. The reaction mixture was stirred for 11 days at RT. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by silica gel chromatography. The product was eluted with 5% MeOH/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The appropriate fractions were evaporated to yield the product (11 g). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 0.84 (t, 3, CH<sub>3</sub>); 1.22 (m, 32, O—CH<sub>2</sub>—CH<sub>2</sub>—(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>16</sub>); 1.86 (m, 2, O—CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>); 3.25 (m, 2, O—CH<sub>2</sub>); 3.93 (d, 1, 4'H), 4.25 (m, 1, 3'H); 4.38 (t, 1, 2'H); 5.08 (d, 1, 3'-OH); 5.48 (t, 1, 5'-OH); 5.75 (s, 2, 6—NH<sub>2</sub>); 5.84 (d, 1, 1'-H); 6.8 (s, 2, 2—NH<sub>2</sub>); and 7.95 (s, 1, 8-H)

## EXAMPLE 3-b

## Synthesis of 2'-O-Octadecylguanosine

2,6-Diamino-9-(2-O-octadecyl-β-D-ribofuranosyl) purine (10 g) in 0.1 M sodium phosphate buffer (50 mL, pH 7.4), 0.1 M tris buffer (1000 mL, pH 7.4) and DMSO (1000 mL) was treated with adenosine deaminase (1.5 g) at RT. At day 3, day 5 and day 7 an additional aliquot (500 mg, 880 mg and 200 mg, respectively) of adenosine deaminase was added. The reaction was stirred for a total of 9 day and purification by silica gel chromatography yielded the product (2 g). An analytical sample was recrystallized from MeOH <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 0.84 (t, 3, CH<sub>3</sub>), 1.22 [s, 32, O—CH<sub>2</sub>—CH<sub>2</sub>—(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>16</sub>], 5.07 (m, 2, 3'-OH and 5'-OH); 5.78 (d, 1, 1'-H); 6.43 (s, 2, NH<sub>2</sub>), 7.97 (s, 1, 8-H) and 10.64 (s, 1, NH<sub>2</sub>). Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>49</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>5</sub>: C, 62.80; H, 9.16; N, 12.95. Found: C, 62.54; H, 9.18; N, 12.95.

## EXAMPLE 3-c

Synthesis of N<sup>2</sup>-Isobutyryl-2'-O-octadecylguanosine

2'-O-Octadecylguanosine (1.9 g) in pyridine (150 mL) was cooled in an ice bath, and treated with trimethylsilyl chloride (2 g, 5 eq) and isobutyryl chloride (2 g, 5 eq). The reaction mixture was stirred for 4 hours, during which time it was allowed to warm to room temperature. The solution was cooled, water added (10 mL) and stirred for an additional 30 minutes. Concentrated ammonium hydroxide (10 mL) was added and the solution concentrated in vacuo. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (eluted with 3t MeOH/EtOAc) to yield 1.2 g of product. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 0.85 (t, 3, CH<sub>3</sub>), 1.15 (m, 38, O—CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>16</sub>, CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>), 2.77 (m, 1, CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>), 4.25 (m, 2, 2'-H and

## 23

3'-H); 5.08 (t, 1, 5'-OH), 5.12 (d, 1, 3'-OH), 5.87 (d, 1, 1'-H), 8.27 (s, 1, 8-H), 11.68 (s, 1, NH<sub>2</sub>) and 12.08 (s, 1, NH<sub>2</sub>). Anal. Calcd. for C<sub>32</sub>H<sub>55</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>6</sub>: C, 63.47; H, 9.09; N, 11.57. Found: C, 63.53; H, 9.20; N, 11.52. Prior to incorporating this product into an oligonucleotide, it was converted to N<sup>2</sup>-Isobutyryl-5'-dimethoxytrityl-2'-O-octadecyl-guanosine and then to a phosphoramidite according to the procedures described in International Publication Number WO 94/02501, published Feb. 3, 1994.

## EXAMPLE 4

## 2'-Fluoro nucleoside amidites

2'-fluoro substituted nucleoside amidites are prepared as follows in Examples 4-a through 4-d or alternately as per the method of Kawasaki et. al., *J. Med. Chem.*, 1993, 36, 831-841.

## EXAMPLE 4-a

i. N<sup>6</sup>-Benzoyl-9-β-D-arabinofuranosyladenine

9-β-D-arabinofuranosyladenine (1.07 g, 4.00 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous pyridine (20 mL) and anhydrous dimethylformamide (20 mL) under an argon atmosphere. The solution was cooled to 0° C. and chlorotrimethylsilane (3.88 mL, 30.6 mmol) was added slowly to the reaction mixture via a syringe. After stirring the reaction mixture at 0° C. for 30 minutes, benzoyl chloride (2.32 mL, 20 mmol) was added slowly. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to 20° C. and stirred for 2 hours. After cooling the reaction mixture to 0° C., cold water (8 mL) was added and the mixture was stirred for 15 minutes. Concentrated ammonium hydroxide (8 mL) was slowly added to the reaction mixture to give a final concentration of 2 M of ammonia. After stirring the cold reaction mixture for 30 minutes, the solvent was evaporated in vacuo (60 torr) at 20° C. followed by evaporation in vacuo (1 torr) at 40° C. to give an oil. This oil was triturated with diethyl ether (50 mL) to give a solid which was filtered and washed with diethyl ether three times. This crude solid was triturated in methanol (100 mL) at reflux temperature three times and the solvent was evaporated to yield N<sup>6</sup>-Benzoyl-9-β-D-arabino-furanosyladenine as a solid (1.50 g, 100%).

ii. N<sup>6</sup>-Benzoyl-9-[3', 5'-di-O-tetrahydropyran-2-yl)-β-D-arabino furanosyl]adenine

N<sup>6</sup>-Benzoyl-9-β-D-arabinofuranosyladenine (2.62 g, 7.06 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous dimethylformamide (150 mL) under argon and p-toluenesulfonic acid monohydrate (1.32 g, 6.92 mmol) was added. This solution was cooled to 0° C. and dihydropyran (1.26 mL, 13.8 mmol) was added via a syringe. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to 20° C. Over a period of 5 hours a total of 10 equivalents of dihydropyran were added in 2 equivalent amounts in the fashion described. The reaction mixture was cooled to 0° C. and saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate was added slowly to a pH of 8, then water was added to a volume of 750 mL. The aqueous mixture was extracted with methylene chloride (4×200 mL), and the organic phases were combined and dried over magnesium sulfate. The solids were filtered and the solvent was evaporated in vacuo (60 torr) at 30° C. to give a small volume of liquid which was evaporated in vacuo (1 torr) at 40° C. to give an oil. This oil was coevaporated with p-xylene in vacuo at 40° C. to give an oil which was dissolved in methylene chloride (100 mL). Hexane (200 mL) was added

## 24

to the solution and the lower-boiling solvent was evaporated in vacuo at 30° C. to leave a white solid suspended in hexane. This solid was filtered and washed with hexane (3×10 mL) then purified by column chromatography using silica gel and methylene chloride-methanol (93:7) as the eluent. The first fraction yielded the title compound 3 as a white foam (3.19 g, 83%) and a second fraction gave a white foam (0.81 g) which was characterized as the 5'-monotetrahydropyranyl derivative of N<sup>6</sup>-Benzoyl-9-β-D-arabinofuranosyladenine.

iii. N<sup>6</sup>-Benzoyl-9-[2'-O-trifluoromethylsulfonyl-3',5'-di-O-tetrahydropyran-2-yl)-β-D-arabinofuranosyl]adenine

N<sup>6</sup>-Benzoyl-9-[3',5'-di-O-tetrahydropyran-2-yl)-β-D-arabinofuranosyl]adenine (2.65 g, 4.91 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous pyridine (20 mL) and the solvent was evaporated in vacuo (1 mm Hg) at 40° C. The resulting oil was dissolved in anhydrous methylene chloride (130 mL) under argon anhydrous pyridine (3.34 mL, 41.3 mmol) and N,N-dimethylaminopyridine (1.95 g, 16.0 mmol) were added. The reaction mixture was cooled to 0° C. and trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride (1.36 mL, 8.05 mmol) was added slowly via a syringe. After stirring the reaction mixture at 0° C. for 1 hour, it was poured into cold saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (140 mL). The mixture was shaken and the organic phase was separated and kept at 0° C. The aqueous phase was extracted with methylene chloride (2×140 mL). The organic extracts which were diligently kept cold were combined and dried over magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated in vacuo (60 torr) at 20° C. then evaporated in vacuo (1 torr) at 20° C. to give N<sup>6</sup>-Benzoyl-9-[2'-O-tri-fluoromethylsulfonyl-3',5'-di-O-tetrahydropyran-2-yl)-β-D-arabinofuranosyl]adenine as a crude oil which was not purified further.

iv. N<sup>6</sup>-Benzoyl-9-[2'-fluoro-3',5'-di-O-tetrahydropyran-2-yl)-β-D-arabinofuranosyl]adenine

N<sup>6</sup>-Benzoyl-9-[2'-O-trifluoromethylsulfonyl-3',5'-di-O-tetrahydropyran-2-yl)-β-D-arabinofuranosyl]adenine (4.9 mmol) as a crude oil was dissolved in anhydrous tetrahydrofuran (120 mL) and this solution was cooled to 0° C. under argon. Tetrabutylammonium fluoride as the hydrate (12.8 g, 49.1 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous tetrahydrofuran (50 mL) and half of this volume was slowly added via a syringe to the cold reaction mixture. After stirring at 0° C. for 1 hour, the remainder of the reagent was added slowly. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0° C. for an additional 1 hour, then the solvent was evaporated in vacuo (60 torr) at 20° C. to give an oil. This oil was dissolved in methylene chloride (250 mL) and washed with brine three times. The organic phase was separated and dried over magnesium sulfate. The solids were filtered and the solvent was evaporated to give an oil. The crude product was purified by column chromatography using silica gel in a sintered-glass funnel and ethyl acetate was used as the eluent. N<sup>6</sup>-Benzoyl-9-[2'-fluoro-3',5'-di-O-tetrahydropyran-2-yl)-β-D-arabinofuranosyl]adenine was obtained as an oil (2.03 g, 76w).

v. N<sup>6</sup>-Benzoyl-9-(2'-fluoro-β-D-ribofuranosyl)adenine

N<sup>6</sup>-Benzoyl-9-[2'-fluoro-3',5'-di-O-tetrahydropyran-2-yl)-β-D-arabinofuranosyl]adenine (1.31 g, 2.42 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (60 mL), and Dowex 50W×2-100 (4 cm<sup>3</sup>, 2.4 m.eq) was added to the reaction mixture. The reaction mixture was stirred at 20° C. for 1 hour then cooled to 0°

25

C. Triethylamine (5 mL) was then slowly added to the cold reaction mixture to a pH of 12. The resin was filtered and washed with 30% triethylamine in methanol until the wash no longer contained UV absorbing material. Toluene (50 mL) was added to the washes and the solvent was evaporated at 24° C. in vacuo (60 torr, then 1 torr) to give a residue. This residue was partially dissolved in methylene chloride (30 mL) and the solvent was transferred to a separatory funnel. The remainder of the residue was dissolved in hot (60° C.) water and after cooling the solvent it was also added to the separatory funnel. The biphasic system was extracted, and the organic phase was separated and extracted with water (3×100 mL). The combined aqueous extracts were evaporated in vacuo (60 torr, then 1 torr Hg) at 40° C. to give an oil which was evaporated with anhydrous pyridine (50 mL). This oil was further dried in vacuo (1 torr Hg) at 20° C. in the presence of phosphorous pentoxide overnight to give N<sup>6</sup>-benzoyl-9-(2'-fluoro-β-D-ribofuranosyl)adenine as a yellow foam (1.08 g, 100%) which contained minor impurities.

vi. N<sup>6</sup>-Benzoyl-9-[2'-fluoro-5'-O-(4,4'-dimethoxytrityl)-β-D-ribofuranosyl]adenine

N<sup>6</sup>-Benzoyl-9-(2'-fluoro-β-D-ribofuranosyl)adenine (1.08 g, 2.89 mmol) which contained minor impurities was dissolved in anhydrous pyridine (20 mL) under argon and dry triethylamine (0.52 mL, 3.76 mmol) was added followed by addition of 4,4'-dimethoxytrityl chloride (1.13 g, 3.32 mmol). After 4 hours of stirring at 20° C. the reaction mixture was transferred to a separatory funnel and diethyl ether (40 mL) was added to give a white suspension. This mixture was washed with water three times (3×10 mL), the organic phase was separated and dried over magnesium sulfate. Triethylamine (1 mL) was added to the solution and the solvent was evaporated in vacuo (60 torr Hg) at 20° C. to give an oil which was evaporated with toluene (20 mL) containing triethylamine (1 mL). This crude product was purified by column chromatography using silica gel and ethyl acetate-triethylamine (99:1) followed by ethyl acetate-methanol-triethylamine (80:19:1) to give the product in two fractions. The fractions were evaporated in vacuo (60 torr, then 1 torr Hg) at 20° C. to give a foam which was further dried in vacuo (1 torr Hg) at 20° C. in the presence of sodium hydroxide to give N<sup>6</sup>-Benzoyl-9-[2'-fluoro-5'-O-(4,4'-dimethoxytrityl)-β-D-ribofuranosyl]adenine as a foam (1.02 g, 52%)

vii. N<sup>6</sup>-Benzoyl-9-[2'-fluoro-5'-O-(4,4'-dimethoxytrityl)]-adenosine-3'-O—N,N-diisopropyl-β-cyanoethyl phosphoramidite

N<sup>6</sup>-Benzoyl-9-[2'-fluoro-5'-O-(4,4'-dimethoxytrityl)-β-D-ribofuranosyl]adenine (1.26 g, 1.89 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (13 mL) under argon, diisopropylethylamine (0.82 mL, 4.66 mmol) was added, and the reaction mixture was cooled to 0° C. Chloro(diisopropylamino)-β-cyanoethoxyphosphine (0.88 mL, 4.03 mmol) was added to the reaction mixture which was allowed to warm to 20° C. and stirred for 3 hours. Ethylacetate (80 mL) and triethylamine (1 mL) were added and this solution was washed with brine (3×25 mL). The organic phase was separated and dried over magnesium sulfate. After filtration of the solids the solvent was evaporated in vacuo at 20° C. to give an oil which was purified by column chromatography using silica gel and hexanes-ethyl acetate-triethylamine (50:49:1) as the eluent. Evaporation of the fractions in vacuo at 20° C. gave a foam which was evaporated with anhydrous pyridine (20 mL) in vacuo (1 torr) at 26° C. and further dried in vacuo

26

(1 torr Hg) at 20° C. in the presence of sodium hydroxide for 24 h to give N<sup>6</sup>-Benzoyl-[2'-deoxy-2'-fluoro-5'-O-(4,4'-dimethoxytrityl)]-adenosine-3'-O-(N,N-diisopropyl-β-cyanoethylphosphoramidite) as a foam (1.05 g, 63%)

## EXAMPLE 4-b

2'-Deoxy-2'-fluoro-5'-O-(4,4'-dimethoxytrityl)-uridine-3'-O-(N,N-diisopropyl-β-cyanoethyl-phosphoramidite)

2,2'-Cyclouridine is treated with a solution of 70% hydrogen fluoride/pyridine in dioxane at 120° C. for ten hours to provide after solvent removal a 75% yield of 2'-deoxy-2'-fluorouridine. The 5'-DMT and 3'-cyanoethoxydiisopropylphosphoramidite derivitized nucleoside is obtained by standard literature procedures [Gait, Ed., *Oligonucleotide Synthesis. A Practical Approach*, IRL Press, Washington, D.C. (1984)], or according to the procedure of Example 4-a.

## EXAMPLE 4-c

2'-Deoxy-2'-fluoro-5'-O-(4,4'-dimethoxytrityl)-cytidine-3'-O-(N,N-diisopropyl-β-cyanoethyl phosphoramidite)

2'-Deoxy-2'-fluorouridine (2.51 g, 10.3 mmol) was converted to corresponding cytidine analog via the method of C. B. Reese, et al., *J. Chem. Soc. Perkin Trans I*, pp. 1171-1176 (1982), by acetylation with acetic anhydride (3.1 mL, 32.7 mmol) in anhydrous pyridine (26 mL) at room temperature. The reaction was quenched with methanol, the solvent was evaporated in vacuo (1 torr) to give an oil which was coevaporated with ethanol and toluene. 3',5'-O-diacetyl-2'-deoxy-2'-fluoro-uridine was crystallized from ethanol to afford colorless crystals (2.38 g, 81%).

N-4-(1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)-3',5'-O-diacetyl-2'-deoxy-2'-fluorouridine was obtained in a 70% yield (2.37 g) by reaction of 3',5'-O-diacetyl-2'-deoxy-2'-fluorouridine (2.75 g, 9.61 mmol) with 1,2,4-triazole (5.97 g, 86.5 mmol), phosphorus oxychloride (1.73 mL, 18.4 mmol), and triethylamine (11.5 mL, 82.7 mmol) in anhydrous acetonitrile at room temperature. After 90 min the reaction mixture was cooled to ice temperature and triethylamine (7.98 mL, 56.9 mmol) was added followed by addition of water (4.0 mL). The solvent was evaporated in vacuo (1 torr) to give an oil which was dissolved in methylene chloride and washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The aqueous phase was extracted with methylene chloride twice (2×100 mL) and the organic extracts dried with magnesium sulfate. Evaporation of the solvent afforded an oil from which the product N-4-(1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)-3',5'-O-diacetyl-2'-deoxy-2'-fluorouridine was obtained by crystallization from ethanol.

2'-deoxy-2'-fluorocytidine was afforded by treatment of protected triazol-1-yl derivative with concentrated ammonium hydroxide (4.26 mL, 81.2 mmol) in dioxane at room temperature for 6 hours. After evaporation of the solvent the oil was stirred in half-saturated (at ice temperature) ammonia in methanol for 16 hours. The solvent was evaporated and 2'-deoxy-2'-fluoro-cytidine crystallized from ethylacetate-methanol (v/v, 75:25) to give colorless crystals (1.24 g, 75%).

N-4-benzoyl-2'-deoxy-2'-fluorocytidine was prepared by selective benzylation with benzoic anhydride in anhydrous dimethylformamide, V. Bhat, et al. *Nucleosides Nucleotides*, Vol. 8, pp. 179-183 (1989). The 5'-O-(4,4'-dimethoxytrityl)-3'-O-(N,N-diisopropyl-β-cyanoethyl-phosphoramidite) was prepared in accordance with Example 4-a.

27

## EXAMPLE 4-d

i. 9-(3',5'-[1,1,3,3-Tetraisopropylidisiloxy-1,3-diyl]- $\beta$ -D-arabinofuranosyl)guanine

The 3' and 5' positions of guanosine were protected by the addition of a TPDS (1,1,3,3-tetraisopropylidisiloxy-1,3-diyl) protecting group as per the procedure of Robins et al. [*Can. J. Chem.*, 61, 1911 (1983)]. To a stirred solution of DMSO (160 mL) and acetic anhydride (20 mL) was added the TPDS guanosine (21 g, 0.040 mol). The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 36 hours and then cooled to 0° C. Cold ethanol (400 mL, 95%) was added and the reaction mixture further cooled to -78° C. in a dry ice/acetone bath. NaBH<sub>4</sub> (2.0 g, 1.32 mol. eq.) was added. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm up to -2° C., stirred for 30 minutes and again cooled to -78° C. This was repeated twice. After the addition of NaBH<sub>4</sub> was complete, the reaction was stirred at 0° C. for 30 minutes and then at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction was taken up in ethyl acetate (1 L) and washed twice with a saturated solution of NaCl. The organic layer was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was coevaporated twice with toluene and purified by silica gel chromatography using CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>-MeOH (9:1) as the eluent. Pure product (6.02 g) precipitated from the appropriate column fractions during evaporation of these fractions, and an additional 11.49 g of product was obtained as a residue upon evaporation of the fractions.

ii. N<sup>2</sup>-Isobutyryl-9-(2'-O-isobutyryl-3',5'-[1,1,3,3-tetraiso-propylidisiloxy-1,3-diyl]- $\beta$ -D-arabinofuranosyl)guanine

9-(3',5'-[1,1,3,3-Tetraisopropylidisiloxy-1,3-diyl]- $\beta$ -D-arabinofuranosyl)guanine (6.5 g, 0.01248 mol) was dissolved in anhydrous pyridine (156 mL) under argon. DMAP (9.15 g) was added. Isobutyric anhydride (6.12 mL) was slowly added and the reaction mixture stirred at room temperature overnight. The reaction mixture was poured into cold saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (156 mL) and stirred for 10 minutes. The aqueous solution was extracted three times with ethyl acetate (156 mL). The organic phase was washed three times with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and evaporated to dryness. The residue was coevaporated with toluene and purified by silica gel column chromatography using CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>-acetone (85:15) to yield 5.67 g of product.

iii. N<sup>2</sup>-Isobutyryl-9-(2'-O-isobutyryl- $\beta$ -D-arabinofuranosyl)guanine

N<sup>2</sup>-Isobutyryl-9-(2'-isobutyryl-3',5'-[1,1,3,3-tetra-isopropylidisiloxy-1,3-diyl]- $\beta$ -D-arabinofuranosyl)guanine (9.83 g, 0.01476 mol) was dissolved in anhydrous THF (87.4 mL) at room temperature under argon. 1 M (nBu)<sub>4</sub>N<sup>+</sup>F<sup>-</sup> in THF (29.52 mL, 2 eq.) was added and the reaction mixture stirred for 30 minutes. The reaction mixture was evaporated at room temperature and the residue purified by silica gel column chromatography using EtOAc-MeOH (85:15) to yield 4.98 g (80%) of product.

iv. N<sup>2</sup>-Isobutyryl-9-(2'-O-isobutyryl-3',5'-di-O-[tetrahydropyran-2-yl]- $\beta$ -D-arabinofuranosyl)guanine

N<sup>2</sup>-Isobutyryl-9-(2'-isobutyryl- $\beta$ -D-arabinofuranosyl)guanine (4.9 g) was dissolved in anhydrous 1,4-dioxane (98 mL) at room temperature under argon. p-Toluenesulphonic acid monohydrate (0.97 g) was added followed by 3,4-dihy-

28

dro-2H-pyran (DHP, 9.34 mL, 8.8 eq.). The reaction mixture was stirred for 2 hours, then cooled to 0° C. and saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (125 mL) was added to quench the reaction. The reaction mixture was extracted three times with 125 mL portions of CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and the organic phase dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The organic phase was evaporated and the residue dissolved in minimum volume of CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, but in an amount sufficient to yield a clear liquid not a syrup, and then dripped into hexane (100 times the volume of CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>). The precipitate was filtered to yield 5.59 (81.5%) of product.

v. N<sup>2</sup>-Isobutyryl-9-(3',5'-di-O-[tetrahydropyran-2-yl]- $\beta$ -D-ara-binofuranosyl)guanine

N<sup>2</sup>-Isobutyryl-9-(2'-isobutyryl-3',5'-di-O-[tetrahydropyran-2-yl]- $\beta$ -D-arabinofuranosyl)guanine (5.58 g) was dissolved in pyridine-MeOH-H<sub>2</sub>O (65:30:15, 52 mL) at room temperature. The solution was cooled to 0° C. and 52 mL of 2 N NaOH in EtOH-MeOH (95:5) was added slowly, followed by stirring for 2 hours at 0° C. Glacial acetic acid was added to pH 6, and saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> was added to pH 7. The reaction mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue coevaporated with toluene. The residue was then dissolved in EtOAc (150 mL) and washed 3 $\times$  with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub>. The organic phase was evaporated and the residue purified by silica gel column chromatography using EtOAc-MeOH (95:5) as the eluent, yielding 3.85 g (78.3%) of product.

vi. N<sup>2</sup>-Isobutyryl-9-(3',5'-di-O-[tetrahydropyran-2-yl]-2'-O-trifluoromethylsulfonyl- $\beta$ -D-arabinofuranosyl)guanine

N<sup>2</sup>-Isobutyryl-9-(3',5'-di-O-[tetrahydropyran-2-yl]- $\beta$ -D-arabinofuranosyl)guanine (3.84 g) was dissolved in anhydrous CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (79 mL), anhydrous pyridine (5 mL) and DMAP (2.93 g) at room temperature under argon. The solution was cooled to 0° C. and trifluoromethanesulfonyl anhydride (1.99 mL) was slowly added with stirring. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour then poured into 100 mL of saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub>. The aqueous phase was extracted three times with cold CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The organic phase was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, evaporated and coevaporated with anhydrous MeCN to yield a crude product.

vii. N<sup>2</sup>-Isobutyryl-9-(2'-deoxy-2'-fluoro-3',5'-di-O-[tetrahydropyran-2-yl]-2'-O-trifluoromethylsulfonyl-1-D-ribofuranosyl)guanine

Crude N<sup>2</sup>-isobutyryl-9-(3',5'-di-O-[tetrahydropyran-2-yl]-2'-O-trifluoromethylsulfonyl- $\beta$ -D-arabinofuranosyl)guanine was dissolved in anhydrous THF (113 mL) under argon at 0° C. 1 M (nBu)<sub>4</sub>N<sup>+</sup>F<sup>-</sup> (dried by coevaporation with pyridine) in THF (36.95 mL) was added with stirring. After 1 hour, a further aliquot of (nBu)<sub>4</sub>N<sup>+</sup>F<sup>-</sup> in THF (36.95 mL) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0° C. for 5 hours and stored overnight at -30° C. The reaction mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue dissolved in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (160 mL) and extracted five times with deionized water. The organic phase was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and evaporated. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using EtOAc-MeOH (95:5) to yield 5.25 g of product.

## 29

viii. N<sup>2</sup>-Isobutyryl-9-(2'-deoxy-2'-fluoro-β-D-ribofuranosyl)-guanine

N<sup>2</sup>-isobutyryl-9-(2'-deoxy-2'-fluoro-3',5'-di-O-[tetrahydropyran-2-yl]-β-D-ribofuranosyl)guanine (3.85 g) was dissolved in MeOH (80 mL) at room temperature. Pre-washed Dowex 50W resin (12.32 cm<sup>3</sup>) was added and the reaction mixture stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The resin was filtered and the filtrate evaporated to dryness. The resin was washed with pyridine-triethylamine-H<sub>2</sub>O (1:3:3) until filtrate was clear. This filtrate was evaporated to obtain an oil. The residues from both filtrates were combined in H<sub>2</sub>O (200 mL) and washed with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (3×100 mL). The aqueous phase was evaporated to dryness and the residue recrystallized from hot MeOH to yield 0.299 g of product as a white powder. The remaining MeOH solution was purified by silica gel column chromatography to further yield 0.783 g of product by elution with EtOH-MeOH (4:1).

ix. N<sup>2</sup>-Isobutyryl-9-(2'-deoxy-2'-fluoro-5'-O-[4,4-dimethoxytrityl]-β-D-ribofuranosyl)guanine

N<sup>2</sup>-isobutyryl-9-(2'-deoxy-2'-fluoro-β-D-ribofuranosyl)guanine (1.09 g) was dissolved in pyridine (20 mL) and triethylamine (0.56 mL) at room temperature under argon. 4,4'-Dimethoxytrityl chloride (1.20 g, 1.15 molar eq.) was added and the reaction mixture stirred at room temperature for 5 hours. The mixture was transferred to a separatory funnel and extracted with diethyl ether (100 mL). The organic phase was washed with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (3×70 mL), and the aqueous phase back-extracted three times with diethyl ether. The combined organic phases were dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and triethylamine (4 mL) was added to maintain the solution at basic pH. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by silica gel column chromatography using EtOAc-triethylamine (100:1) and then EtOAc-MeOH-triethylamine (95:5:1) as eluents yielding 1.03 g of product.

x. N<sup>2</sup>-Isobutyryl-9-(2'-deoxy-2'-fluoro-5'-O-[4,4-dimethoxytrityl]-guanosine-3'-O—N,N-diisopropyl-β-D-cyanoethyl phosphor-amidite

N<sup>2</sup>-isobutyryl-9-(2'-deoxy-2'-fluoro-5'-O-[4,4'-dimethoxytrityl]-β-D-ribofuranosyl)guanine (0.587 g) was dissolved in anhydrous CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (31 mL) and diisopropylethylamine (0.4 mL) at room temperature under argon. The solution was cooled to 0° C. and chloro(diisopropylamino)-β-cyanoethoxyphosphine (0.42 mL) was slowly added. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for 3.5 hours. CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>-triethylamine (100:1, 35 mL) was added and the mixture washed with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (6 mL). The organic phase was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub> and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using hexane-EtOAc-triethylamine (75:25:1) for 2 column volumes, then hexane-EtOAc-triethylamine (25:75:1), and finally EtOAc-triethylamine. The product-containing fractions were pooled and the solvent evaporated under reduced pressure. The resulting oil was coevaporated twice with MeCN and dried under reduced pressure. The resulting white solid was dissolved in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (3 mL) and dripped into stirring hexane (300 mL). The resulting precipitate was filtered and dried under reduced pressure to yield 0.673 g (88%) of product.

## EXAMPLE 5

Nucleoside amidites having substitution on their sugar and their base fragments are shown in Examples 5-a through 5-k.

## 30

## EXAMPLE 5-a

## Other nucleoside amidites

## i. 1-(2-Fluoro-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine

2,2'-Anhydro-[1-(β-D-arabinofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine] (71 g, 0.32 mmol) (from Example 2-a) and dioxane (700 mL) are placed in a 2 liter stainless steel bomb and HF/pyridine (100 g, 70%) was added. The mixture was heated for 16 hours at 120-125° C. and then cooled in an ice bath. The bomb was opened and the mixture was poured onto 3 liters of ice. To this mixture was added cautiously sodium hydrogen carbonate (300 g) and saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (400 mL). The mixture was filtered and the filter cake was washed with water (2×100 mL) and methanol (2×500 mL). The water and methanol washes were concentrated to dryness in vacuo. Methanol (200 mL) and coarse silica gel (80 g) were added to the residue and the mixture was concentrated to dryness in vacuo. The resulting material was concentrated onto the silica gel and purified by silica gel column chromatography using a gradient of ethyl acetate and methanol (100:0 to 85:15). Pooling and concentration of the product fractions gave 36.9 g (51%, 2 step yield) of the title compound.

Also isolated from this reaction was 1-(2-phenyl-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine (10.3 g). This material is formed from the phenol and its sodium salt from the anhydro reaction above when the bomb reaction is carried out on impure material. When the anhydro material is purified this product is not formed. The formed 1-(2-phenyl-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine was converted into its DMT/phosphoramidite using the same reaction conditions as for the 2'-Fluoro material.

## ii. 1-(5-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2-fluoro-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine

1-(2-fluoro-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine (31.15 g, 0.12 mol) was suspended in pyridine (150 mL) and dimethoxytrityl chloride (44.62 g, 0.12 mol) was added. The mixture was stirred in a closed flask for 2 hours and then methanol (30 mL) was added. The mixture was concentrated in vacuo and the resulting residue was partitioned between saturated bicarbonate solution (500 mL) and ethyl acetate (3×500 mL). The ethyl acetate fractions were pooled and dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to a thick oil. The oil was dissolved in dichloromethane (100 mL), applied to a silica gel column and eluted with ethyl acetate:hexane:triethylamine, 60/39/1 increasing to 75/24/1. The product fractions were pooled and concentrated in vacuo to give 59.9 g (89%) of the title compound as a foam.

## iii. 1-(5-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2-fluoro-3-O—N,N-diisopropylamino-2-cyanoethylphosphite-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine

1-(5-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2-fluoro-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine (59.8 g, 0.106 mol) was dissolved in dichloromethane and 2-cyanoethyl N,N,N',N'-tetraisopropyl-phosphorodiamidite (46.9 mL, 0.148 mol) and diisopropylamine tetrazolidine (5.46 g, 0.3 eq.) was added. The mixture was stirred for 16 hours. The mixture was washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate (1 L) and the bicarbonate solution was back extracted with dichloromethane (500 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with brine (1 L) and the brine was back extracted with dichloromethane (100 mL).

## 31

The combined organic layers were dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated to a vol of about 200 mL. The resulting material was purified by silica gel column chromatography using hexane/ethyl acetate/triethyl amine 60/40/1. The product fractions were concentrated in vacuo, dissolved in acetonitrile (500 ml), filtered, concentrated in vacuo, and dried to a foam. The foam was chopped and dried for 24 hours to a constant weight to give 68.2 g (84%) of the title compound. <sup>1</sup>H NMR: (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.9-1.4 (m, 14H, 4×CH<sub>3</sub>, 2×CH), 2.3-2.4 (t, 1H, CH<sub>2</sub>CN), 2.6-2.7 (t, 1H, CH<sub>2</sub>CN), 3.3-3.8 (m, 13H, 2×CH<sub>3</sub>OAr, 5' CH<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>OP, C-5 CH<sub>3</sub>), 4.2-4.3 (m, 1H, 4'), 4.35-5.0 (m, 1H, 3'), 4.9-5.2 (m, 1H, 2'), 6.0-6.1 (dd, 1H, 1'), 6.8-7.4 (m, 13H, DMT), 7.5-7.6 (d, 1H, C-6), 8.8 (bs, 1H, NH) <sup>31</sup>P NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 151.468, 151.609, 151.790, 151.904.

iv. 1-(3',5'-di-O-acetyl-2-fluoro-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine

1-(2-fluoro-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine (22.4 g, 92 mmol, 85% purity), prepared as per the procedure of Example 5-a-i., was azeotroped with pyridine (2×150 mL) and dissolved in pyridine (250 mL). Acetic anhydride (55 mL, 0.58 mol) was added and the mixture was stirred for 16 hours. Methanol (50 mL) was added and stirring was continued for 30 minutes. The mixture was evaporated to a syrup. The syrup was dissolved in a minimum amount of methanol and loaded onto a silica gel column. Hexane/ethyl acetate, 1:1, was used to elute the product fractions. Purification gave 19.0 g (74%) of the title compound.

## EXAMPLE 5-b

i. 4-Triazine-1-(3',5'-di-O-acetyl-2-fluoro-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine

1,2,4-Triazole (106 g, 1.53 mol) was dissolved in acetonitrile (150 mL) followed by triethylamine (257 mL, 1.84 mol). The mixture was cooled to between 0 and 10 °C using an ice bath. POCl<sub>3</sub> (34.5 mL, 0.375 mol) was added slowly via addition funnel and the mixture was stirred for an additional 45 minutes. In a separate flask, 1-(3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2-fluoro-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine (56.9 g, 0.144 mol) was dissolved in acetonitrile (150 mL). The solution containing the 1-(3',5'-Di-O-acetyl-2-fluoro-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine was added via cannula to the triazole solution slowly. The ice bath was removed and the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature for 1 hour. The acetonitrile was removed in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (400 mL) and dichloromethane (4×400 mL). The organic layers were combined and concentrated in vacuo. The resulting residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (200 mL) and started to precipitate a solid. Hexanes (300 mL) was added and additional solid precipitated. The solid was collected by filtration and washed with hexanes (2×200 mL) and dried in vacuo to give 63.5 g which was used as is without further purification.

ii. 5-methyl-1-(2-fluoro-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-cytosine

4-Triazine-1-(3',5'-di-O-acetyl-2-fluoro-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-thymine (75.5 g, 0.198 mol) was dissolved in ammonia (400 mL) in a stainless steel bomb and sealed overnight. The bomb was cooled and opened and the ammonia was evaporated. Methanol was added to transfer the material to a flask and about 10 volumes of ethyl ether was added.

## 32

The mixture was stirred for 10 minutes and then filtered. The solid was washed with ethyl ether and dried to give 51.7 g (86%) of the title compound.

iii. 4-N-Benzoyl-5-methyl-1-(2-fluoro-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)cytosine

5-Methyl-1-(2-fluoro-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-cytosine (54.6 g, 0.21 mol) was suspended in pyridine (700 mL) and benzoic anhydride (70 g, 0.309 mol) was added. The mixture was stirred for 48 hours at room temperature. The pyridine was removed by evaporation and methanol (800 mL) was added and the mixture was stirred. A precipitate formed which was filtered, washed with methanol (4×50 mL), washed with ether (3×100 mL), and dried in a vacuum oven at 45° C. to give 40.5 g of the title compound. The filtrate was concentrated in vacuo and treated with saturated methanolic ammonia in a bomb overnight at room temperature. The mixture was concentrated in vacuo and the resulting oil was purified by silica gel column chromatography. The recycled starting material was again treated as above to give an additional 4.9 g of the title compound to give a combined 45.4 g (61%) of the title compound.

iv. 4-N-Benzoyl-5-methyl-1-(2-fluoro-5-O-dimethoxytrityl-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)cytosine

b 4-N-Benzoyl-5-methyl-1-(2-fluoro-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-cytosine (45.3 g, 0.124 mol) was dissolved in 250 ml dry pyridine and dimethoxytrityl chloride (46.4 g, 0.137 mol) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 90 minutes and methanol (20 mL) was added. The mixture was concentrated in vacuo and partitioned between ethyl acetate (2×1 L) and saturated sodium bicarbonate (1 L). The ethyl acetate layers were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated in vacuo. The resulting oil was dissolved in dichloromethane (200 mL) and purified by silica gel column chromatography using ethyl acetate/hexane/triethyl amine 50:50:1. The product fractions were pooled concentrated in vacuo dried to give 63.6 g (76.6%) of the title compound.

v. 4-N-Benzoyl-5-methyl-1-(2-fluoro-3-O—N,N-diisopropyl-amino-2-cyanoethylphosphite-5-O-dimethoxytrityl-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)cytosine

4-N-Benzoyl-5-methyl-1-(2-fluoro-5-O-dimethoxytrityl-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-cytosine (61.8 g, 92.8 mmol) was stirred with dichloromethane (300 mL), 2-cyanoethyl N,N,N',N'-tetraisopropylphosphorodiamidite (40.9 mL, 0.130 mol) and diisopropylamine tetrazolide (4.76 g, 0.3 eq.) at room temperature for 17 hours. The mixture was washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate (1 L) and the bicarbonate solution was back extracted with dichloromethane (500 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with brine (1 L) and the brine was back extracted with dichloromethane (100 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated to a vol of about 200 mL. The resulting material was purified by silica gel column chromatography using hexane/ethyl acetate/triethyl amine 60/40/1. The product fractions were concentrated in vacuo, dissolved in acetonitrile (500 ml), filtered, concentrated in vacuo, and dried to a foam. The foam was chopped and dried for 24 hours to a constant weight to give 72.4 g (90%) of the title compound. <sup>1</sup>H NMR: (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.17-1.3 (m, 12H,

## 33

4×CH<sub>3</sub>), 1.5-1.6 (m, 2H, 2×CH), 2.3-2.4 (t, 1H, CH<sub>2</sub>CN), 2.6-2.7 (t, 1H, CH<sub>2</sub>CN), 3.3-3.9 (m, 13H, 2×CH<sub>2</sub>OAr, 5'CH<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>OP, C-5 CH<sub>3</sub>), 4.2-4.3 (m, 1H, 4'), 4.3-4.7 (m, 1H, 3'), 5.0-5.2 (m, 1H, 2'), 6.0-6.2 (dd, 1H, 1'), 6.8-6.9 (m, 4H, DMT), 7.2-7.6 (m, 13H, DMT, Bz), 7.82-7.86 (d, 1H, C-6), 8.2-8.3 (d, 2H, Bz) <sup>31</sup>P NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>); bs, 151.706; bs, 151.941.

## EXAMPLE 5-c

## i. 1-(2,3-di-O-Butyltin-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine

5-Methyluridine (7.8 g, 30.2 mmol) and dibutyltin oxide (7.7 g, 30.9 mmol) were suspended in methanol (150 mL) and heated to reflux for 16 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, filtered, and the solid washed with methanol (2×150 mL). The resulting solid was dried to give 12.2 g (80.3%) of the title compound. This material was used without further purification in subsequent reactions. NMR was consistent with structure.

## ii. 1-(2-O-Propyl-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine

1-(2,3-di-O-butyltin-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine (5.0 g, 10.2 mmol) and iodopropane (14.7 g, 72.3 mmol) were stirred in DMF at 100° C. for 2 days. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and filtered and concentrated. The residual DMF was coevaporated with acetonitrile. After drying the residue there was obtained 2.40 g (78%) of the title compound and the 3'-O-propyl isomer as a crude mixture. This material was used without further purification in subsequent reactions.

## iii. 1-(2-O-Propyl-5-O-Dimethoxytrityl-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine

1-(2-O-Propyl-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine and the 3'-O-propyl isomer as a crude mixture (2.4 g, 8.4 mmol) was coevaporated with pyridine (2×40 mL) and dissolved in pyridine (60 mL). The solution was stirred at room temperature under argon for 15 minutes and dimethoxytrityl chloride (4.27 g, 12.6 mmol) was added. The mixture was checked periodically by tlc and at 3 hours was completed. Methanol (10 mL) was added and the mixture was stirred for 10 minutes. The reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo and the resulting residue purified by silica gel column chromatography using 60:40 hexane/ethyl acetate with 1% triethylamine used throughout. The pooling and concentration of appropriate fractions gave 1.32 g (26%) of the title compound.

## iv. 1-(2-O-Propyl-3-O-N,N-Diisopropylamino-2-cyanoethylphosphite-5-O-Dimethoxytrityl-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine

1-(2-O-Propyl-5-O-dimethoxytrityl-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine (50.0 g, 86 mmol), 2-cyanoethyl-N,N,N',N'-tetra-isopropylphosphorodiamidite (38 mL, 120 mmol), and diisopropylamine tetrazolide (4.45 g, 25.8 mmol) were dissolved in dichloromethane (500 mL) and stirred at room temperature for 40 hours. The reaction mixture was washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (2×400 mL) and brine (1×400 mL). The aqueous layers were back extracted with dichloromethane. The dichloromethane layers were combined, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and con-

## 34

centrated in vacuo. The resultant residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using ethyl acetate/hexane 40:60 and 1% triethylamine. The appropriate fractions were pooled, concentrated, and dried under high vacuum to give 43 g (67%).

## v. 1-(2-O-Propyl-3-O-acetyl-5-O-dimethoxytrityl-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine

1-(2-O-Propyl-5-dimethoxytrityl-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine (10.0 g, 16.6 mmol) was dissolved in pyridine (50 mL) and acetic anhydride (4.7 ml, 52.7 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred for 18 hours and excess acetic anhydride was neutralized with methanol (10 mL). The mixture was concentrated in vacuo and the resulting residue dissolved in ethyl acetate (150 mL). The ethyl acetate was washed with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (150 mL) and the saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> wash was back extracted with ethyl acetate (50 mL). The ethyl acetate layers were combined and concentrated in vacuo to yield a white foam 11.3 g. The crude yield was greater than 100% and the NMR was consistent with the expected structure of the title compound. This material was used without further purification in subsequent reactions.

## EXAMPLE 5-d

## i. 1-(2-O-Propyl-3-O-acetyl-5-O-dimethoxytrityl-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-4-triazolo-5-methylpyrimidine

Triazole (10.5 g, 152 mmol) was dissolved in acetonitrile (120 ml) and triethylamine (23 mL) with stirring under anhydrous conditions. The resulting solution was cooled in a dry ice acetone bath and phosphorous oxychloride (3.9 mL, 41 mmol) was added slowly over a period of 5 minutes. The mixture was stirred for an additional 10 minutes becoming a thin slurry indicative of product formation. 1-(2-O-Propyl-3-O-acetyl-5-O-dimethoxytrityl-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine (11.2 g, 165 mmol) was dissolved in acetonitrile (150 mL) and added to the slurry above, maintaining dry ice acetone bath temperatures. The reaction mixture was stirred for 30 minutes and then allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for an additional 2 hours. The mixture was placed in a freezer at 0° C. for 18 hours and then removed and allowed to warm to room temperature. Tlc in ethyl acetate/hexane 1:1 of the mixture showed complete conversion of the starting material. The reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo and redissolved in ethyl acetate (300 mL) and extracted with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (2×400 mL) and brine (400 mL). The aqueous layers were back extracted with ethyl acetate (200 mL). The ethyl acetate layers were combined, dried over sodium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo. The crude yield was 11.3 g (95%). The NMR was consistent with the expected structure of the title compound. This material was used without further purification in subsequent reactions.

## ii. 1-(2-O-Propyl-5-O-dimethoxytrityl-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methylcytidine

1-(2-O-Propyl-3-O-acetyl-5-O-dimethoxytrityl-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-4-triazolo-5-methylpyrimidine (11.2 g, 16.1 mmol) was dissolved in liquid ammonia (50 mL) in a 100 mL bomb at dry ice acetone temperatures. The bomb was allowed to warm to room temperature for 18 hours and then recooled to dry ice acetone temperatures. The bomb contents were transferred to a beaker and methanol (50 mL)

35

was added. The mixture was allowed to evaporate to near dryness. Ethyl acetate (300 mL) was added and some solid was filtered off prior to washing with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (2x250 mL). The ethyl acetate layers were dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, combined with the solid previously filtered off, and concentrated in vacuo to give 10.1 g of material. The crude yield was greater than 100% and the NMR was consistent with the expected structure of the title compound. This material was used without further purification in subsequent reactions.

iii. 1-(2-O-Propyl-5-O-dimethoxytrityl-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-4-N-benzoyl-5-methylcytidine

1-(2-O-Propyl-5-O-dimethoxytrityl-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methylcytidine (7.28 g, 10.1 mmol) and benzoic anhydride (4.5 g, 20 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (60 mL) and stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo and redissolved in ethyl acetate (300 mL). The ethyl acetate solution was washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (2x400 mL), dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using ethyl acetate/hexane 1:2 and 1% triethylamine. The appropriate fractions were pooled, concentrated, and dried under high vacuum to give 5.1 g (59% for 4 steps starting with the 1-(2-O-propyl-dimethoxytrityl-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-5-methyluridine).

iv. 1-(2-O-Propyl-3-O—N,N-diisopropylamino-2-cyanoethylphosphite-5-O-dimethoxytrityl-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-4-N-benzoyl-5-methylcytidine

1-(2-O-Propyl-5-O-dimethoxytrityl-β-D-erythro-pentofuranosyl)-4-N-benzoyl-5-methylcytidine (5.0 g, 7 mmol), 2-cyanoethyl-N,N,N',N'-tetra-isopropylphosphorodiamidite (3.6 mL, 11.3 mmol), and diisopropylaminotetrazolidine (0.42 g, 2.4 mmol) were dissolved in dichloromethane (80 mL) and stirred at room temperature for 40 hours. The reaction mixture was washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (2x40 mL) and brine (1x40 mL). The aqueous layers were back extracted with dichloromethane. The dichloromethane layers were combined, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated in vacuo. The resultant residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using ethyl acetate/hexane 40:60 and 1% triethylamine. The appropriate fractions were pooled, concentrated, and dried under high vacuum to give 7.3 g (98%).

EXAMPLE 5-e

i. 2'-O-Methyl-5-methyluridine

Procedure 1:

Crude 2,2'-anhydro-5-methyluridine (10.0 g, 0.0416 mol) (Example 2-a) was dissolved in methanol (80 mL) in a stainless steel bomb (100 mL capacity). Trimethyl borate (5.6 mL, 0.049 mol) was added (Note 1). The bomb was sealed and placed in an oil bath at 150° C. which generated a pressure of about 5 atm. After 40 h, the bomb was cooled in ice, opened and the contents concentrated under reduced pressure to a tan foam, 12 g. NMR of the crude was consistent with the product contaminated with impurities in the starting material and a trace of thymine and starting material (Note 2). The crude product was used as is for the next step.

36

The trialkyl borates can be conveniently generated by adding solutions (eg 1 M in THF) of borane to the desired alcohol and allowing the resulting hydrogen gas to evolve.) The nucleoside can be purified at this point by column chromatography using a gradient of methanol in ethyl acetate (0-10%) and crystallizing the product from absolute ethanol to give white needles, mp 192-193° (mp 197-198°). Literature reference for the melting point of this compound is contained in E. Ootsuka, H. Inoue, Japanese Patent 89-85456, 4 Apr. 1989.

Procedure 2:

Pure 2,2'-anhydro-5-methyluridine (1.0 g, 4.16 mmol) and trimethylborate (0.56 mL, 4.9 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (20 mL) in a stainless steel bomb (100 mL). The bomb was placed in an oil bath at 150° C. After 80 h, TLC indicating the reaction to be mostly complete. The solvent was removed yielding a white foam. NMR indicated product to starting material ratio of 93:7 with no other impurities noted. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography using a methanol gradient in ethyl acetate (0-10%) yielding 850 mg (75%) of pure product and 250 mg of still contaminated product. An analytically pure sample was prepared for NMR. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>): δ 1.79 (s, 3H, 5-CH<sub>3</sub>), 3.35 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.5-3.7 (m, 2H, H-5'), 3.7-3.9 (m, 2H, H-3',4'), 4.15 (m, 1H, H-2'), 5.17 (m, 2H, 3',5'-OH), 5.87 (d, J=5 Hz, 1H, H-1'), 7.80 (s, 1H, H-6), 11.37 (br s, 1H, N-H). Anal. Calcd for C<sub>11</sub>H<sub>16</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>6</sub> (272.26): C, 48.52; H, 5.92; N, 10.29. Found: C, 48.56; H, 5.88; N, 10.22.

Procedure 3:

The same as described for procedure 2 except 30 mg of sodium bicarbonate was added to the reaction (to match the sodium content of the crude anhydro) which allowed the reaction to be complete in 24 h. Ammonium chloride (50 mg) was added to neutralize the base and the solution was stripped to dryness. NMR of the crude indicated three minor nucleoside impurities (total about 6%). After a similar column and then crystallizing the residue from methanol/ethyl acetate, there remained 850 mg of first crop material and 120 mg of second crop material both with 2-3% of unknown nucleoside impurities for a still contaminated yield of 85%.

ii. 5'-O-Dimethoxytriphenylmethyl-2'-O-methyl-5-methyluridine

Crude 2'-O-methyl-5-methyl uridine (12 g) was coevaporated in pyridine (2x50 mL) and dissolved in dry pyridine (50 mL). Dimethoxytriphenylmethyl chloride (18.1 g, 0.054 mol) was added. The flask was stoppered and allowed to stand for 45 min at room temperature. Methanol (10 mL) was added to quench the reaction and the solution was concentrated under reduced pressure to an oil. The residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate (2x400 mL) and saturated sodium bicarbonate solution (500 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried (sodium sulfate), filtered and concentrated to a yellow foam. The foam was dissolved in methylene chloride (60 mL) and put onto a silica gel column (300 g) and eluted with ethyl acetate-hexanes-triethylamine, 60:40:1. The product containing fractions were combined, concentrated and coevaporated with dry acetonitrile (2x50 mL). The resulting

37

residue was dried at 1 mm Hg for 24 h to a crisp white foam, 17.0 g (60.4% in three steps from 5-methyluridine).

## EXAMPLE 5-f

## i. 2,3,5-Tri-O-benzoyl-2-thio-5-methyluridine

In a 250 ml 3 neck round bottomed flask 1-O-acetyl-2,3,5-tri-O-benzoyl ribose (0.500 g, 1 mmol) and 5-methyl-2-thiouracil (0.156 g, 1.1 mmol) was dried under vacuum overnight. These components were dissolved in 10 mL of dry acetonitrile and heated to 80° C. To this warm solution was added N—O-bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide (0.509 g, 2.5 mmol) and the reaction stirred for 1 hr at 80° C. The reaction mixture was removed from the heat and allowed to cool to room temperature, and trimethyl silyl triflate (0.334 g, 1.5 mmol) was added dropwise. The reaction mixture was then heated to 50° C. and stirred for 4 hours. The reaction mixture was checked by TLC using ethyl acetate/hexane 1:1, which showed the reaction had gone to completion. The solution was cooled to room temperature and partitioned between 50 mL of dichloromethane and 50 mL of saturated sodium bicarbonate solution. The aqueous phase was extracted two more times with dichloromethane and the organic layers combined, dried with magnesium sulfate and concentrated to a pale yellow foam. This foam was used without further purification.

## ii. 2-Thio-5-methyluridine

The crude 2,3,5-tri-O-benzoyl-2-thio-5-methyl uridine (20 g, 37 mmoles) was dissolved in 500 mL of methanol. To this solution was added sodium methoxide (2.0 g, 37 mmoles) and the reaction stirred for 2 hours. The reaction was checked by TLC using ethyl acetate/hexane 1:1 and ethyl acetate/methanol 9:1, which showed the reaction had gone to completion. Dowex 50H<sup>+</sup> resin was added until the solution was neutral by pH paper and the resin filtered. The resin was then washed with 100 ml of additional methanol and the combined filtrates were concentrated to give the title compound 8.5 g, (84%) as a pale yellow foam.

## EXAMPLE 5-g

## 2'-O-Methyl-5-methyl-2-thiouridine

To a stirred solution of 5-methyl-2-thiouridine (0.500 g, 1.8 mmol) in DMF (10 ml) is added dibutyltin oxide (0.500 g, 2.0 mmol), tetrabutyl ammonium iodide (0.738 g, 2 mmol), and methyl iodide (1.022 g, 7.2 mmol). The reaction flask is sealed and heated at 50° C. for 16 hours. The mixture is cooled and another portion of methyl iodide is added (1.022 g, 7.2 mmol) and the reaction heated for an. additional 16 hours. At the end of this time, the reaction mixture is cooled to room temperature and diluted with methylene chloride and chromatographed using a methylene chloride/methanol gradient. The appropriate fractions are collected and concentrated to give 2'-O-methyl-5-methyl-2-thiouridine.

## EXAMPLE 5-h

## 2'-O-Propyl-5-methyl-2-thiouridine

The title compound is prepared as per the procedures of Example 5-g by substituting propyl iodide (1.22 g, 7.2 mmoles) in place of methyl iodide.

38

## EXAMPLE 5-i

## i. 2'-O-phthalimidopropyl-5-methyl-2-thiouridine

The title compound was prepared as per the procedures of Example 5-g by substituting bromo-propyl phthalimide (0.67 g, 2.5 mmoles) in place of methyl iodide, with an additional (0.300 g) added on the second day.

## ii. 5'-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2'-O-propylamine-5-methyl-2-thiouridine

2'-O-Phthalimidopropyl-5-methyl-2-thiouridine (2.6 g, 3.6 mmol) was dissolved in dry pyridine and co-evaporated twice. The resulting foam was dissolved in 25 mL of dry pyridine and dimethoxy-trityl chloride (1.8 g, 5.5 mmol) was added followed by 4,4-dimethylaminopyridine (0.050 g, 0.4 mmol). The reaction was allowed to stir overnight at room temperature: To the reaction mixture was added 1 mL of methanol. The solution was partitioned between 75 mL of saturated sodium bicarbonate and 50 mL of chloroform. The aqueous layer was extracted with two additional portions of chloroform and the organic layers combined and dried with magnesium sulfate. After removal of the drying agent via filtration the filtrate was concentrated to an orange oil and purified by silica gel column chromatography using methanol/chloroform gradient with 0.5% pyridine added to neutralize the silica gel.

## iii. 5'-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2'-O-propylamine-5-methyl-2S-toluoyl-2-thiouridine

5'-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2'-O-propylamine-5-methyl-2-thiouridine (1 g, 1.6 mmol) was dissolved in DMF and cooled to 0° C. To this solution was added triethyl amine (0.300 g, 3 mmol) followed by toluoyl chloride (0.300 g, 1.92 mmol) dropwise over 5 minutes. The reaction was then allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred overnight, when complete the reaction was quenched with methanol and concentrated to an oil. The oil was then partitioned between 250 mL of a solution of saturated sodium bicarbonate/chloroform 1:1. The aqueous layer was extracted with two additional, 75 mL portions of chloroform, and the organic layers were dried and concentrated to an oil. The protected nucleoside was purified by silica gel column chromatography using a hexane/ethyl acetate gradient. The desired product was collected as a mixture of N-3 toluoyl and S-2 Toluoyl compounds. This mixture was used as is for the phosphyt-ilation procedure.

## iv. 5'-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2'-O-propylamine-3'-O-[(N,N-diisopropylamino)-2-cyanoethoxyphosphite]-5-methyl-2-S-toluoyl-2-thiouridine

To a solution of 5'-O-dimethoxytrityl-2'-O-propyl-amine-5-methyl-2-S-toluoyl-2-thiouridine (16.01 g, 22 mmol) and diisopropylethylamine (10 ml) in THF (200 ml), at 0° C., is added chloro-β-cyanoethoxy-N,N-diisopropylaminophosphine (5.6 ml, 25 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20 hours. The reaction was concentrated and the residue purified by silica gel column chromatography. Elution with an ethyl acetate/hexane gradient while

maintaining 1% triethylamine, pooling of appropriate fractions and evaporation will give the title compound.

## EXAMPLE 5-j

## i. 2'-O-Aminopropyl-5-methyl-2-thiouridine

2'-O-Phthalimidopropyl-5-methyl-2-thiouridine (5.0 g, 15.8 mmol) is dissolved in 100 ml methanol in a 500 ml flask. Hydrazine (2.02 g, 63.2 mmol) is added and the mixture is heated to reflux (60-65° C.) with stirring for 14 hours. The solvent is evaporated in vacuo and the residue is dissolved in dichloromethane (150 ml) and extracted twice with an equal volume NH<sub>4</sub>OH. The organic layer is evaporated to yield the crude product. NMR is used to assay product purity. The product is used in subsequent reactions without further purification.

ii. 2'-O-Trifluoroacetylaminopropyl-5-methyl-2-thiouridine 2'-O-Aminopropyl-5-methyl-2-thiouridine is dissolved in MeOH and 5 equivalents of triethylamine are added followed by 10 equivalents of ethyl trifluoroacetate. The title compound is isolated after purification.

iii. 2'-O-Trifluoroacetylaminopropyl-5'-O-dimethoxytrityl-5-methyl-2-thiouridine 2'-O-Trifluoroacetylaminopropyl-5-methyl-2-thiouridine (2.5 g, 3.6 mmol) is dissolved in dry pyridine and co-evaporated twice. The resulting yellow foam is dissolved in 25 mL of dry pyridine and dimethoxytrityl chloride (1.8 g, 5.5 mmol) is added followed by 4,4-dimethylaminopyridine (0.050 g, 0.4 mmol). The reaction is allowed to stir overnight at room temperature. To the reaction mixture is added 1 mL of methanol. The solution is partitioned between 75 mL of saturated sodium bicarbonate and 50 mL of chloroform. The aqueous layer is extracted with two additional portions of chloroform and the organic layers combined and dried with magnesium sulfate. After removal of the drying agent via filtration the filtrate is concentrated to an oil and purified by silica gel column chromatography using methanol/chloroform gradient with 0.5% pyridine added to neutralize the silica gel to give the title compound.

## iv. 2'-O-Trifluoroacetylaminopropyl-3'-O-[(N,N-diisopropylamino)-2-cyanoethoxyphosphite]-5'-O-dimethoxytrityl-5-methyl-2-thiouridine

The title compound is prepared as per the procedure of Example 5-i-iv. using the title compound from Example 5-j-iii.

## EXAMPLE 5-k

## i. 5'-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2-thio-5-methyluridine

2-Thio-5-methyl uridine (1 g, 3.6 mmol) was dissolved in dry pyridine and co-evaporated twice. The resulting yellow foam was dissolved in 25 mL of dry pyridine and dimethoxytrityl chloride (1.8 g, 5.5 mmol) was added followed by 4,4-dimethylaminopyridine (0.050 g, 0.4 mmol). The reaction was allowed to stir overnight at room temperature. To the reaction mixture was added 1 mL of methanol. The solution was partitioned between 75 mL of saturated sodium bicarbonate and 50 mL of chloroform. The aqueous layer was extracted with two additional portions of chloroform and the organic layers combined and dried with magnesium sulfate. After removal of the drying agent via filtration the filtrate was concentrated to an orange oil and purified by silica gel column chromatography using methanol/chloroform gradient with 0.5% pyridine added to neutralize the silica gel.

## ii. 5'-O-Dimethoxytrityl-3'-t-butyl dimethylsilyl-5-methyl-2-thiouridine

5'-O-Dimethoxytrityl-2-thio-5-methyl uridine (1 g, 1.73 mmol) was co-evaporated twice with dry DMF and then dissolved in dry DMF and imidazole (0.141 g, 2.08 mmol) was added followed by (0.313 g, 2.08 mmol) of t-butyl dimethylsilyl chloride. The reaction mixture was stirred overnight. The reaction was checked by TLC using ethyl acetate/hexane 1:1, which showed the reaction had gone to completion. The reaction mixture was then poured into 5% sodium bicarbonate and extracted 3 times with chloroform. The combined organic solution was dried with magnesium sulfate and concentrated to an oil. The resulting oil was purified by silica gel column chromatography using a methanol/chloroform gradient isolating separately the 2' and 3' silyl protected nucleoside.

## iii. 5'-O-Dimethoxytrityl-3'-t-butyl dimethylsilyl-2'-methanesulfonyl-5-methyl-2-thiouridine

5'-O-Dimethoxytrityl-3'-t-butyl dimethylsilyl-5-methyl-2-thiouridine (1.0 g, 1.45 mmoles) was dissolved in pyridine and cooled to 0° C. To this solution was added methanesulfonyl chloride (0.183 g, 1.6 mmoles) dropwise. The reaction was then allowed to stir until complete by TLC. The reaction mixture is neutralized with methanol and concentrated to an oil. The title compound is used as is for further reactions.

## iv. 5'-Dimethoxytrityl-3'-t-butyl dimethylsilyl-2,2'-thio anhydro-5-methyl-2-thiouridine

The mesylated nucleoside found in Example 5-k-iii is treated at room temperature with 5 equivalents of sodium methoxide and allowed to stir until complete formation of the thioanhydro product. The solution is then neutralized with Dowex 50W (H<sup>+</sup> form), the resin filtered off and the resulting solution concentrated to give the title compound.

## v. 2'-Fluoro-3'-t-butyl dimethylsilyl-5'-Dimethoxytrityl-5-methyl-2-thiouridine

The thioanhydronucleoside found in Example 5-k-iv was dissolved in anhydrous dioxane. To this solution was added 6 equivalents of HF/Pyridine complex and the reaction stirred until complete by TLC. The reaction mixture is then poured over an equal volume of ice and calcium carbonate is added until neutral. The solids are filtered off and the filtrate is concentrated. The residue is purified by silica gel column chromatography to give the title compound.

## vi. 2'-Fluoro-3'-O-[(N,N-diisopropylamino)-2-cyanoethoxyphosphite]-5'-dimethoxytrityl-5-methyl-2-thiouridine

2'-Fluoro-3'-t-butyl dimethylsilyl-5'-dimethoxytrityl-5-methyl-2-thiouridine is treated as per the procedure of Example 5-i-iv. to give the title compound.

## EXAMPLE 6

## Oligoribonucleotide Synthesis

Unsubstituted and substituted phosphodiester oligoribonucleotides, also identified herein as PO linked oligoribonucleotides, were synthesized on an automated DNA synthe-

sizer (Applied Biosystems model 380B) using standard phosphoramidite chemistry with oxidation by iodine.

Phosphorothioate oligonucleotides, also identified herein as PS linked oligoribonucleotides, are synthesized as per the phosphodiester oligoribonucleotides except the standard oxidation bottle was replaced by 0.2 M solution of 3H-1,2-benzodithiole-3-one 1,1-dioxide in acetonitrile for the step wise thiation of the phosphite linkages. The thiation wait step was increased to 68 sec and was followed by the capping step. After cleavage from the CPG column and deblocking in concentrated ammonium hydroxide at 55° C. (18 hr), the oligonucleotides were purified by precipitating twice with 2.5 volumes of ethanol from a 0.5 M NaCl solution. Analytical gel electrophoresis was accomplished in 20% acrylamide, 8 M urea, 454 mM Tris-borate buffer, pH=7.0. Oligonucleotides and phosphorothioates were judged, based on polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis, to be greater than 80% full-length material.

Phosphinate oligoribonucleotides, also identified herein as PI linked oligoribonucleotides, are prepared as is described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,508,270, herein incorporated by reference.

Alkyl phosphonate oligoribonucleotides, also identified herein as PME linked oligoribonucleotides, are prepared as is described in U.S. Pat. No. 4,469,863, herein incorporated by reference.

Phosphoramidite oligoribonucleotides, also identified herein as PN linked oligoribonucleotides, are prepared as is described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,256,775 or U.S. Pat. No. 5,366,878, herein incorporated by reference.

Alkylphosphonothioate oligoribonucleotides, also identified herein as MePS linked oligoribonucleotides, are prepared as is described in published PCT applications PCT/US94/00902 and PCT/US93/06976 (published as WO 94/17093 and WO 94/02499, respectively), herein incorporated by reference.

3'-Deoxy-3'-amino phosphoramidate oligoribonucleotide, also identified herein as 3'NPN linked oligoribonucleotides, are prepared as is described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,476,925, herein incorporated by reference.

Phosphotriester oligoribonucleotides, also identified herein as POMe linked oligoribonucleotides, are prepared as is described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,023,243, herein incorporated by reference.

Borano phosphate oligoribonucleotide, also identified herein as BP linked oligoribonucleotides, are prepared as is described in U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,130,302 and 5,177,198, both herein incorporated by reference.

#### EXAMPLE 7-a

##### Oligoribonucleoside synthesis

Methylenemethylimino linked oligoribonucleosides, also identified herein as MMI linked oligoribonucleosides, methylenedimethylhydrazo linked oligoribonucleosides, also identified herein as MDH linked oligoribonucleosides, and methylenecarbonylamino linked oligonucleosides, also identified herein as amide-3 linked oligoribonucleosides, and methyleneaminocarbonyl linked oligonucleosides, also identified herein as amide-4 linked oligoribonucleosides as well as mixed backbone compounds having, as for instance, alternating MMI and PO or PS linkages are prepared as is described in U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,378,825, 5,386,023, 5,489,677 and in published PCT applications PCT/US92/04294 and PCT/US92/04305 (published as WO 92/20822 WO and 92/20823, respectively), herein incorporated by reference.

Formacetal and thioformacetal linked oligoribonucleosides, also identified herein as FA and TFA oligoribonucleosides, respectively, are prepared as is described in U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,264,562 and 5,264,564, herein incorporated by reference.

Ethylene oxide linked oligoribonucleosides, also herein identified as ETO linked oligoribonucleosides, are prepared as is described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,223,618, herein incorporated by reference.

#### EXAMPLE 7-b

##### PNA

Peptide Nucleic Acids (PNAs) are known per se and are prepared in accordance with any of the various procedures referred to in Peptide Nucleic Acids (PNA): Synthesis, Properties and Potential Applications, *Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry*, 1996, 4, 5-23. They may also be prepared in accordance with U.S. Pat. No. 5,539,083, corresponding to Ser. No. 08/200,742, filed Feb. 23, 1994, and assigned to the same assignee as this application. These references are herein incorporated by reference.

#### EXAMPLE 8

Chimeric phosphorothioate oligoribonucleotides, e.g. [2'-O—Me]/PS.[2'-OH]/PS.[-2'-O-Me]/PS oligoribonucleotide

Chimeric oligoribonucleotides having 2'-O-alkyl phosphorothioate and 2'-OH phosphorothioate oligonucleotides segments were synthesized using an Applied Biosystems automated DNA synthesizer Model 380B, as above. Oligoribonucleotides were synthesized using the automated synthesizer and 5'-dimethoxytrityl-2'-tert-butyl dimethylsilyl 3'-O-phosphoramidite for the RNA portion and 5'-dimethoxytrityl-2'-O-methyl-3'-O-phosphoramidite for 5' and 3' wings. The protecting groups on the exocyclic amines were, phenoxyacetyl for rA and rG, benzoyl for rC and 2'-O-methyl A and 2'-O-methyl C, and isobutyryl for 2'-O-methyl G. The standard synthesis cycle was modified by increasing the wait step after the delivery of tetrazole and base to 600 s repeated four times for RNA and twice for 2'-O-methyl.

The fully protected oligoribonucleotide was cleaved from the support and the phosphate group was deprotected in 3:1 Ammonia/Ethanol at room temperature overnight then lyophilized to dryness. Treatment in methanolic ammonia for 24 hrs at room temperature was then done to deprotect all bases and sample was again lyophilized to dryness. The pellet was resuspended in 1M TBAF in THF for 24 hrs at room temperature to deprotect the 2' positions. The reaction is then quenched with 1M TEAA and the sample is then reduced to 1/2 volume by rotovac before being desalted on a G25 size exclusion column. The oligo recovered was then analyzed spectrophotometrically for yield and for purity by capillary electrophoresis and by mass spectrometer.

#### EXAMPLE 9

##### Chimeric "gapmer" oligoribonucleotides

i. Chimeric methyl phosphonate oligoribonucleotide e.g., [2'-O-Me]/PMe.[2'-OH]/PMe.[-2'-O-Me]/PMe oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8, using oligoribonucleotides of Example 6, a chimeric oligoribonucleotide having a methyl phosphonate backbone is prepared.

- ii. Chimeric phosphoramidate oligoribonucleotide, e.g., [2'-O-Me]/PN.[2'-OH]/PN.[-2'-O-Me]/PN oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8, using oligoribonucleotides of Example 6, a chimeric oligoribonucleotide having a phosphoramidate backbone is prepared.

- iii. Chimeric phosphoramidate oligoribonucleotide, e.g., [2'-O-Me]/3'NPN.[2'-OH]/3'NPN.[-2'-O-Me]/3'NPN oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8, using oligoribonucleotides of Example 6, a chimeric oligoribonucleotide having a 3'-deoxy-3'-amino phosphoramidate backbone is prepared.

- iv. Chimeric phosphinate oligoribonucleotide, e.g., [2'-O-Me]/PI.[2'-OH]/PI.[-2'-O-Me]/PI oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8, using oligoribonucleotides of Example 6, a chimeric oligoribonucleotide having a phosphinate backbone is prepared.

- v. Chimeric alkylphosphonothioate oligoribonucleotide, e.g., [2'-O-Me]/MePS.[2'-OH]/MePS.[-2'-O-Me]/MePS oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8, using oligoribonucleotides of Example 6, a chimeric oligoribonucleotide having a phosphonothioate backbone is prepared.

- vi. Chimeric phosphorodithioate oligoribonucleotide, e.g., [2'-O-Me]/P2S.[2'-OH]/P2S.[-2'-O-Me]/P2S oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8, using oligoribonucleotides of Example 6, a chimeric oligoribonucleotide having a phosphorodithioate backbone is prepared.

- vii. Chimeric phosphoselenate oligoribonucleotide, e.g., [2'-O-Me]/PSe.[2'-OH]/PSe.[-2'-O-Me]/PSe oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8, using oligoribonucleotides of Example 6, a chimeric oligoribonucleotide having a phosphoselenate backbone is prepared.

- viii. Chimeric borano phosphate oligoribonucleotide, e.g., [2'-O-Me]/BP.[2'-OH]/BP.[-2'-O-Me]/BP oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8, using oligoribonucleotides of Example 6, a chimeric oligoribonucleotide having a borano phosphate backbone is prepared.

- ix. Chimeric Methyl Phosphotriester oligoribonucleotide, e.g., [2'-O-Me]/POME.[2'-OH]/POME.[-2'-O-Me]/POME oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8, using oligoribonucleotides of Example 6, a chimeric oligoribonucleotide having a methyl phosphotriester backbone is prepared.

## EXAMPLE 10

## Chimeric oligoribonucleosides

- i. Chimeric methylenemethylimino oligoribonucleoside, e.g. [2'-O-Me]/MMI.[2'-OH]/MMI.[-2'-O-Me]/MMI oligoribonucleoside

In the manner of Example 8 using the chemistry of Example 7, a chimeric oligoribonucleoside having methylenemethylimino linkages throughout the oligoribonucleoside is prepared.

- ii. Chimeric methylenedimethylhydrazo oligoribonucleoside, e.g. [2'-O-Me]/MDH.[2'-OH]/MDH.[-2'-O-Me]/MDH oligoribonucleoside

In the manner of Example 8 using the chemistry of Example 7, a chimeric oligoribonucleoside having methylenedimethylhydrazo linkages throughout the oligoribonucleoside is prepared.

- iii. Chimeric formacetal oligoribonucleoside, e.g. [2'-O-Me]/FA.[2'-OH]/FA.[-2'-O-Me]/FA oligoribonucleoside

In the manner of Example 8 using the chemistry of Example 7, a chimeric oligoribonucleoside having formacetal linkages throughout the oligoribonucleoside is prepared.

- iv. Chimeric thioformacetal oligoribonucleoside, e.g. [2'-O-Me]/TFA.[2'-OH]/TFA.[-2'-O-Me]/TFA oligoribonucleoside

In the manner of Example 8 using the chemistry of Example 7, a chimeric oligoribonucleoside having thioformacetal linkages throughout the oligoribonucleoside is prepared.

- v. Chimeric ethyleneoxide oligoribonucleoside, e.g. [2'-O-Me]/ETO.[2'-OH]/ETO.[-2'-O-Me]/ETO oligoribonucleoside

In the manner of Example 8 using the chemistry of Example 7, a chimeric oligoribonucleoside having ethylene oxide linkages throughout the oligoribonucleoside is prepared.

- vi. Chimeric methylenecarbonylamino oligoribonucleoside, e.g. [2'-O-Me]/amide-3.[2'-OH]/amide-3.[-2'-O-Me]/amide.3 oligoribonucleoside

In the manner of Example 8 using the chemistry of Example 7, a chimeric oligoribonucleoside having amide-3 linkages throughout the oligoribonucleoside is prepared.

## EXAMPLE 11

## Chimeric oligoribonucleotides/oligoribonucleosides

- i. Methylenemethylimino/phosphorothioate chimera, e.g. [2'-O-Me]/PS.[2'-OH]/PS.[-2'-O-Me]/MMI oligoribonucleotide/oligoribonucleoside

In the manner of Example 8 using the chemistry of Examples 6 and 7, a chimeric compound having both oligoribonucleotide and oligoribonucleoside segments is prepared.

45

The chimeric compounds has methylenemethylimino linkages in one "wing" and phosphorothioate linkages in a central "gap" and in the other "wing."

- ii. Chimeric Methyl phosphonate/methylenemethylimino/phosphorothioate oligoribonucleotide/oligoribonucleoside, e.g. [2'-O-Me]/PMe.[2'-OH]/PS.[-2'-O-Me]/MMI oligoribonucleotide/oligoribonucleoside

In the manner of Example 8 using the chemistry of Examples 6 and 7, a chimeric compound having both oligoribonucleotide and oligoribonucleoside portions is prepared. The chimeric compound has methylenemethylimino linkages in one "wing", a phosphorothioate linkages in a central "gap" and methyl phosphonate linkages in the other "wing."

- iii. Chimeric methylenecarbonylamino/phosphorothioate/methylenecarbonylamino oligoribonucleotide/oligoribonucleoside, e.g. [2'-O-Me]/amide-3.[2'-OH]/PS.[-2'-O-Me]/amide-3 oligoribonucleotide/oligoribonucleoside

In the manner of Example 8 using the chemistry of Examples 6 and 7, a chimeric compound having both oligoribonucleotide and oligoribonucleoside segments is prepared. The chimeric compound has methylenecarbonylamino linkages in both "wings" and phosphorothioate linkages in a central "gap."

- iv. Chimeric methylenecarbonylamino/phosphorothioate/methylenemethylimino oligoribonucleotide/oligoribonucleoside, e.g. [2'-O-Me]/amide-3.[2'-OH]/PS.[-2'-O-Me]/MMI oligoribonucleotide/oligoribonucleoside

In the manner of Example 8 using the chemistry of Examples 6 and 7, a chimeric compound having both oligoribonucleotide and oligoribonucleoside segments is prepared. The chimeric compound has methylenecarbonylamino linkages in one "wing" segment, phosphorothioate linkages in a central "gap" segment and methylenecarbonylamino linkages in the other "wing" segment.

- v. Methylenemethylimino/phosphodiester/phosphorothioate chimera, e.g. [2'-O-Me]/MMI-PO.[2'-OH]/PS.[-2'-O-Me]/MMI-PO oligoribonucleotide/oligoribonucleoside

In the manner of Example 8 using the chemistry of Examples 6 and 7, a chimeric compound having both oligoribonucleotide and oligoribonucleoside segments is prepared. The chimeric compounds has alternating methylenemethylimino and phosphodiester linkages in its "wing" segments and phosphorothioate linkages in its central "gap" segment.

## EXAMPLE 12

Chimeric "end" gapped phosphorothioate oligoribonucleotides

- i. "3'-End" gapped phosphorothioate chimera, e.g. [2'-O-Me]/PS.[2'-OH]/PS oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8 a chimeric compound having an "open gap" segment at its 3' terminus, a "wing" segment at its 5' terminus and phosphorothioate linkages through out is prepared.

46

- ii. "5'-end" gapped phosphorothioate chimera, e.g. [2'-OH]/PS.[2'-O-Me]/PS oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8 a chimeric compound having an "open gap" segment at its 5' terminus, a "wing" segment at its 3' terminus and phosphorothioate linkages through out is prepared.

- iii. "3'-End" gapped phosphorothioate chimera, e.g. [2'-F]/PS.[2'-OH]/PS oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8, a chimeric compound having an "open gap" at its 3' terminus", 2'-fluoro nucleosides in its 5' "wing" segment, 2'-OH nucleosides in its open "gap" segment and phosphorothioate linkages through out is prepared.

## EXAMPLE 13

Chimeric oligoribonucleotides with uniform backbone linkages and variable nucleoside subunits

- i. Chimeric 2'-O-ethyl oligoribonucleotide, e.g., [2'-O-Et]/PS.[2'-OH]/PS.[2'-O-Et]/PS oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8 a chimeric compound having 2'-O-ethyl nucleosides in its "wing" segments, 2'-OH nucleosides in its "gap" segment and phosphorothioate linkages throughout is prepared.

- ii. Chimeric 2'-O-propyl oligoribonucleotide, e.g., [2'-O-Pr]/PS.[2'-OH]/PS.[2'-O-Pr]/PS oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8 a chimeric compound having 2'-O-propyl nucleosides in its "wing" segments, 2'-OH nucleosides in its "gap" segment and phosphorothioate linkages throughout is prepared.

- iii. [2'-O-f]/PS.[2'-OH]/PS.[2'-O-f]/PS oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8 a chimeric compound having 2'-fluoro nucleosides in its "wings" segments, 2'-OH nucleosides in its "gap" segment and phosphorothioate linkages throughout is prepared.

- iv. [2'-O-EtOMe]/PS.[2'-OH]/PS.[2'-O-EtOMe]/PS oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8 a chimeric compound having 2'-O-methoxyethyl nucleosides in its "wings" segments, 2'-OH nucleosides in its "gap" segment and phosphorothioate linkages through out is prepared.

- v. [2'-O-EtOMe]/PS.[2'-OH]/PS.[2'-F]/PS oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8 a chimeric compound having 2'-O-methoxyethyl nucleosides in its 5' "wing" segment, 2'-OH nucleosides in its "gap" segment, 2'-fluoro nucleosides in its 3' "wing" segment, and phosphorothioate linkages through out is prepared.

47

vi. [2'-O-EtOMe]/PS.[2'-OH]/PS.[2'-O-Me]/PS oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8, a chimeric compound having 2'-O-methoxyethyl nucleosides in its 5' "wing" segment, 2'-OH nucleosides in its gap, 2'-O-methyl nucleosides in its 3' "wing" segment and phosphorothioate linkages through out is prepared.

## EXAMPLE 14

Chimeric oligoribonucleotides having variable backbone Linkages and Variable Nucleosides

i. [2'-O-Me]/PMe.[2'-OH]/PS.[2'-F]/PS oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8 using chemistries of Example 6, a chimeric compound having 2'-O-methyl nucleosides in its 5' "wing" segment, 2'-OH nucleosides in its "gap," 2'-O-fluoro nucleosides in its 3' "wing" segment, phosphorothioate linkages in the "gap" segment and the 3' "wing" segment and methyl phosphonate linkages in the 5' "wing" segment is prepared.

ii. [2'-O-Me]/PME.[2'-OH]/PS.[2'-Pr]/PI oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8 using chemistries of Example 6, a chimeric compound having 2'-O-methyl nucleosides in its 5' "wing" segment, 2'-OH nucleosides in its "gap," 2'-O-propyl nucleosides in its 3' "wing" segment, phosphorothioate linkages in the "gap" segment, methyl phosphonate linkages in 5' "wing" segment and phosphinate linkages in the 3' "wing" segment is prepared.

## EXAMPLE 15

Chimeric oligoribonucleotides that include surrogate nucleosides

i. Morpholino nucleoside surrogate containing oligoribonucleotide, e.g., [morpholino nucleoside surrogate].[2'-OH]/PS.[morpholino nucleoside surrogate]oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Examples 7 and 8, a chimeric compound having morpholino nucleosides prepared as per the teachings of U.S. Pat. No. 5,506,337 in its "wing" segments and 2'-OH nucleosides linked via phosphorothioate linkages in its "gap" segment is prepared.

ii. Cyclobutyl nucleoside surrogate containing oligoribonucleotide, e.g., [cyclobutyl nucleoside surrogate]/PS.[2'-OH]/PS.[cyclobutyl nucleoside surrogate]/PS oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Examples 7 and 8, a chimeric compound having cyclobutyl surrogate nucleosides prepared as per the teachings of U.S. Pat. No. 5,359,044 in its "wing" segments,

48

2'-OH nucleosides in its "gap" segment and phosphorothioate linkages through out is prepared.

iii. Pyrrolidine nucleoside surrogate containing oligoribonucleotide, e.g., [pyrrolidine nucleoside surrogate]/PS.[2'-OH]/PS.[pyrrolidine sugar]/PS oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Examples 7 and 8, a chimeric compound having pyrrolidine surrogate nucleosides prepared as per the teachings of U.S. Pat. No. 5,519,135 in its "wing" segments, 2'-OH nucleosides in its "gap" segment and phosphorothioate linkages through out is prepared.

iv. "3'-End" gapped PNA.phosphorothioate chimera, e.g. PNA-[2'-OH]/PS oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8 in combination with the chemistry of Examples 7-b, a chimeric compound having an "open gap" at its 3' terminus" formed from 2'-OH nucleosides having phosphorothioate linkages and PNA surrogate nucleosides in the 5' "wing" segment, is prepared.

## EXAMPLE 16

Chimeric oligoribonucleotides that include nucleosides having modified bases

i. N-2 modified purine containing oligoribonucleotide, e.g., [Mod-purine]/PS.[2'-OH]/PS.[Mod-purine]/PS oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8, a chimeric compound having 4,7,10,13-tetraazahexadec-1-yl guanosine nucleosides prepared as per the teachings of U.S. Pat. No. 5,459,255 in its "wing" segments, 2'-OH nucleosides in its "gap" and phosphorothioate linkages through out is prepared.

ii. C-5 modified pyrimidine containing oligoribonucleotide, e.g., [Mod-pyr]/PS.[2'-OH]/PS.[Mod-pyr]/PS oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8, a chimeric compound having 5-propynyl pyrimidine nucleosides prepared as per the teachings of U.S. Pat. No. 5,484,908 in its "wing" segments, 2'-OH nucleosides in its "gap" segment and phosphorothioate linkages through out is prepared.

iii. N-2, C-6 modified purine containing oligoribonucleotide, e.g., [Mod-purine]/PS.[2'-OH]/PS.[Mod-purine]/PS oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8, a chimeric compound having 6-hydroxy-2-fluoro purine nucleosides prepared as per the teachings of U.S. Pat. No. 5,459,255 in its "wing" segments, 2'-OH nucleosides in its "gap" and phosphorothioate linkages through out is prepared.

## 49

iv. 2'-O-alkyl, C-5 modified pyrimidine containing oligoribonucleotide, e.g., [2'-O-Propyl-Mod-pyr]/PS.[2'-OH]/PS.[2'-O-propyl-Mod-pyr]/PS oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8, a chimeric compound having 2'-O-propyl-5-methyl cytidine nucleosides in its "wing" segments, 2'-OH nucleosides in its "gap" segment and phosphorothioate linkages through out is prepared.

v. 2'-O-alkyl, N-2, C-5 modified pyrimidine containing oligoribonucleotide, e.g., [2'-O-propyl-Mod-pyr]/PS.[2'-OH]/PS.[2'-O-propyl-Mod-pyr]/PS oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8, a chimeric compound having 2'-O-propyl-2-thio-5-methyl uridine nucleosides in its "wing" segments, 2'-OH nucleosides in its "gap" segment and phosphorothioate linkages through out is prepared.

vi. 2'-O-aminoalkyl, N-2, C-5 modified pyrimidine containing oligoribonucleotide, e.g., [2'-O-aminopropyl-Mod-pyr]/PS.[2'-OH]/PS.[2'-O-aminopropyl-Mod-pyr]/PS oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8, a chimeric compound having 2'-O-aminopropyl-2-thio-5-methyl uridine nucleosides in its "wing" segments, 2'-OH nucleosides in its "gap" segment and phosphorothioate linkages through out is prepared.

vii. 2'-O-fluoro, N-2, C-5 modified pyrimidine containing oligoribonucleotide, e.g., [2'-O-fluoro-Mod-pyr]/PS.[2'-OH]/PS.[2'-O-fluoro-Mod-pyr]/PS oligoribonucleotide

In the manner of Example 8, a chimeric compound having 2'-O-fluoro-2-thio-5-methyl uridine nucleosides in its "wing" segments, 2'-OH nucleosides in its "gap" segment and phosphorothioate linkages through out is prepared.

## EXAMPLE 17

Cell culture and northern blot analysis of ras target

T24 cells were maintained as monolayers in McCoy's medium (GIBCO-BRL, Gaithersburg, Md.) supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum and 100 units/ml penicillin. After treatment with oligomeric compounds for 24 hrs the cells were trypsinized, centrifuged and total cellular RNA was isolated according to standard protocols (see Ausubel et al., *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology*, 1988, Wiley and Sons, New York, N.Y.). To quantify the relative abundance of Ha-ras mRNA, total RNA (10 ug) was transferred by northern blotting onto Bio-Rad Zeta probe membrane (Bio-Rad, Hercules, Calif.) and UV crosslinked (Stratalinker™, Stratagene, LaJolla, Calif.). Membrane bound RNA was hybridized to a <sup>32</sup>P labeled 0.9 kb Ha-ras cDNA probe (Oncogene Science, Pasadena, Calif.) and exposure to XAR film (Kodak, Rochester, N.Y.). The relative amount of Ha-ras signal was determined by normalizing the Ha-ras signal to that obtained when the same membrane was stripped and hybridized with a probe for human glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate dehydrogenase (G3PDH, Clontech, Palo Alto, Calif.). Signals from northern

## 50

blots were quantified using phosphorimager and image quant software (Molecular Dynamics, Sunnyvale, Calif.).

## EXAMPLE 18

Compound treatment of cells

Cells growing in monolayer were washed once with warm PBS then Opti-MEM (GIBCO-BRL) medium containing Lipofectin (GIBCO-BRL) at a concentration of 5 ug/ml per 200 nM of oligo with a maximum concentration of 15 ug/ml was added. Oligomeric compounds were added and incubated at 37° C. for 4 hrs when the medium was replaced with full serum medium. After 24 hrs in the presence of the compound the cells were harvested and RNA prepared for further analysis.

## EXAMPLE 19

RNase H Analysis

RNase H analysis was performed using 17 base oligoribonucleotides corresponding to bases (+23 to +47) of activated (codon 12 mutation) Ha-ras mRNA. 5' End labeled RNA (20 nM) was incubated with a 100-fold molar excess of the various test oligoribonucleotides in a reaction containing 20 mM Tris-Cl, pH 7.5, 100 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>, 1 mM dithiothreitol, and 4 units of RNase inhibitor (Pharmacia, Newark, N.J.) in a final volume of 100 ul. The oligoribonucleotides were melted by heating to 95° C. for 5 minutes then allowed to cool slowly to room temperature in 2 liters bath of water 90° C. Duplex formation was confirmed by the shift in mobility between the single stranded end labeled sense RNA and the annealed duplex on non denaturing polyacrylamide gels. The resulting duplexes were tested as substrates for digestion by *E. coli* RNase H (USB, Cleveland, Ohio). 1 Al of a 1×10<sup>-9</sup> mg/ml solution of RNase H was added to 10 Al of the duplex reaction incubated at 37° C. for 30 minutes, the reaction was terminated by the addition of denaturing loading buffer and reaction products were resolved on a 12% polyacrylamide gel containing 7 M Urea and exposed to XAR film (Kodak).

## EXAMPLE 20

Cell free in vitro nuclease assay

Duplexes used in the cell free T24 extract experiments were annealed as described above with the exception that after formation of the duplex, the reaction was treated with 1 μl of a mixture RNase T and A (Ambion RPAII kit, Austin, Tex.) and incubated for 15 min at 37° C., and then gel purified from a non-denaturing 12% polyacrylamide gel. T24 cell nuclear and cytosolic fractions were isolated as described previously (Szyf M., Bozovic, V., and Tanigawa, G., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 1991, 266, 10027-10030). Annealed duplexes (10 μl) were incubated with 3 μg of the T24 cytosolic extract at 37° C. The reaction was terminated by phenol/chloroform extraction and ethanol precipitated with the addition of 10 μg of tRNA as a carrier. Pellets were resuspended in 10 μl of denaturing loading dye, products were resolved on 12% denaturing acrylamide gels as described above. <sup>32</sup>P-labeled 17-base RNA

## 51

was hydrolysed by heating to 95° C. for 10 minutes in the presence of 50 mM NaCO<sub>3</sub>, pH=9.0 to generate a molecular weight ladder.

## EXAMPLE 21

## Determination of 5' and 3' termini

Non-labeled duplex was treated with T24 extracts as done previously, half of this reaction was treated with calf intestinal phosphatase (CIP, Stratagene) and half was left untreated. The phosphatase was inactivated by heating to 95° C and the reactions were extracted with phenol/chloroform and then precipitated in ethanol with glycogen as a carrier. The precipitates were then treated with T4 polynucleotide kinase (Stratagene) and <sup>32</sup>P-γ-ATP (ICN, Irvine, Calif.). The samples were again extracted by phenol/chloroform and precipitated with ethanol, the products of the reaction were then resolved on a 12% acrylamide gel and visualized by exposure to XAR film. The 3'-terminus of the cleaved duplex was evaluated by the reaction of duplex digestion products with T4 RNA ligase (Stratagene) and <sup>32</sup>P-pCp (ICN).

## EXAMPLE 22

## Chimeric 2'-methoxy oligoribonucleotides mediate digestion of target RNA in T24 cells

Structure activity analyses of antisense oligonucleotides specific for codon 12 of the Ha-ras oncogene containing various 2'-sugar modifications were reported by Monia, et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 1992, 267, 19954-19962 and Monia et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 1993, 268, 14514-14522. In those reports, although the 2'-modified oligonucleotides hybridized with greater affinity to RNA than did unmodified 2'-deoxy oligos they were completely ineffective in inhibiting Ha-ras gene expression. The lack of activity observed with these 2'-modified oligos was directly attributed to their inability to create duplexes that could serve as substrates for degradation by RNase H. Following a similar protocol, stretches of ribonucleotides were introduced into the center of 17 base 2'-methoxy oligoribonucleotides targeting Ha-ras mRNA to form 2'-methoxy-2'-hydroxy-2'-methoxy phosphorothioate oligoribonucleotide "gapped" chimeric compounds that have varying ribonucleotide content in the central gap segment (see FIG. 1 for a representation of these compounds as well as their base sequence). When hybridized to their cellular target the resultant duplex consists of two stretches that are not targets for nucleolytic degradation (the 2'-methoxy "wings") and one 2'-hydroxyl oligoribonucleotide stretch that was found to be a target for a novel ribonuclease activity that recognizes RNA:RNA duplexes. T24 human bladder carcinoma cells were used that contain an activating G-T transversion mutation in the Ha-ras gene at the codon 12 position. The "gapped" chimeric compounds specific for this mutation were transfected into T24 cells growing in culture. After incubation with the compounds for 24 hrs, cells were harvested, total cytosolic RNA isolated and Northern blot analysis for Ha-ras mRNA levels performed. Fully modified 2'-methoxy oligonucleotides did not support nucleolytic cleavage of target mRNA and therefore did not lead to a reduction in steady state levels of Ha-ras mRNA even at the highest concentration tested (FIGS. 2A and 2B). An RNA gapmer oligonucleotide with only 3 ribonucleotides in the gap was also incapable of inducing nucleolytic cleavage of the target RNA (FIGS. 2C and 2D). However, T24 cells treated with RNA gapmer oligonucleotides containing 5, 7

## 52

and 9 ribonucleotides in the gap as well as a full phosphorothioate oligoribonucleotide molecule all displayed dose dependent reductions in Ha-ras steady state mRNA levels (FIGS. 3B-3D). T24 cells treated with a control 9 RNA gapmer oligonucleotide that contained four mismatched bases in its sequence did not show dose dependent reduction in Ha-ras mRNA suggesting that hybridization to the target RNA is essential for activity (FIG. 3E). The RNA gapmer compounds showed dose dependent inhibition of Ha-ras steady state mRNA levels.

The ability of the RNA gapmer compounds to reduce Ha-ras mRNA was dependent on the size of the RNA gap and thus the size of the RNA:RNA duplex formed in vivo. Treatment of cells with the 3 base RNA gapmer compounds resulted in no cleavage of the target whereas the 5, 7 and 9 base RNA gapmer compounds resulted in reduction in Ha-ras mRNA (FIG. 4). The fact that the RNA gapmer oligonucleotide containing 3 ribonucleotides in the gap was unable to induce reduction in target mRNA suggests that the activity involved requires a minimal RNA:RNA duplex region of at least four ribonucleotides for binding and cleavage of the target. Interestingly, chimeric DNA gapmer oligonucleotides that contain deoxynucleotides in the gap instead of ribonucleotides show the same minimal gap size requirements to form substrates for RNase H mediated degradation of the target mRNA (Crooke et al., *Annu. Rev. Pharmacol.*, 1996, 36, 107), suggesting that RNase H and the double stranded RNase activity described here may share some properties, although their substrates are clearly different.

A control 9 RNA gapmer compound that contains four mismatched bases in its sequence resulted in essentially no reduction in Ha-ras mRNA as expected as is shown in FIG. 3E. A full phosphorothioate oligoribonucleotide molecule had approximately the same activity as the 5 RNA gapmer oligo (FIG. 3D). This might have been due to the relative decrease in stability of the full oligoribonucleotide in vivo resulting from inactivation by single stranded ribonucleases, as 2'-methoxy phosphorothioate oligodeoxynucleotides are considerably more stable than phosphorothioate oligoribonucleotides. Crooke et al., *J. Pharmacol Exp. Ther.*, 1996, 277, 923-937. Treatment of T24 cells with the various oligonucleotides and various concentrations up to 800 nM was done in triplicate and quantification of Ha-ras mRNA levels indicate that at 600 nM the 5 gapmer reduces Ha-ras mRNA by 51%, the 7 gapmer by 49%, the 9 gapmer by 77% and the full ribonucleotide by 38% when compared to non treated controls. This suggests that RNA gapmer oligoribonucleotides protected by 2'-methoxy wings would be more potent molecules. As shown in this example, an endoribonuclease activity in T24 human bladder carcinoma cells recognizes the internal RNA:oligoribonucleotide portion of a chimeric duplex and reduced the target mRNA levels.

## EXAMPLE 23

## An activity present in T24 cellular extracts induces cleavage of gapmer oligoribonucleotide:RNA duplex within the internal RNA:RNA portion in vitro

To further characterize the double-stranded RNA cleavage activity in T24 cells, T24 cellular extracts were prepared and tested for the ability to cleave the 9 gap oligoribonucleotide:RNA duplex in vitro. The 9 gap compound:<sup>32</sup>P-end labeled RNA duplex was incubated with 3 μg of cytosolic extract at 37° C. for varying time periods as shown in FIG. 4, followed by phenol chloroform extraction ethanol precipitation and separation of the products on a denaturing gel. That this

duplex was a substrate for digestion by an activity present in T24 extracts is shown by the loss of full length end labeled RNA and the appearance of lower molecular weight digestion products indicated by arrows in FIG. 4. In addition, the activity responsible for the cleavage of the duplex has specificity for the RNA:RNA portion of the duplex molecule, as indicated by the sizes of the cleavage products it produces (see the physical map of the <sup>32</sup>P-end labeled RNA, far right in FIG. 4. RNase H cleavage of a 9 deoxynucleotide gap oligonucleotide:RNA duplex and cleavage of the 9 ribonucleotide gap oligoribonucleotide:RNA duplex by T24 cellular extracts appears to result in similar digestion products. This is seen by comparing the gels of FIGS. 4 and 5. Both activities displayed preferred cleavage sites near the 3' end of the target RNA in their respective duplexes which suggests that they may share binding as well as mechanistic properties. Cellular extracts prepared from human umbilical vein epithelial cells (HUV-VEC), human lung carcinoma (A549) and Hela cell lines all contained an activity able to induce cleavage of the 9 RNA gapmer:RNA target duplex in vitro.

#### EXAMPLE 24

##### Cleavage of target RNA in both cytoplasmic and nuclear fractions of cell products

The cellular distribution of the double stranded RNase activity described herein was further evaluated. Nuclear extracts were prepared from T24 cells and tested for the ability to digest the 9 RNA gapmer oligonucleotide:RNA duplex. Nuclear extracts prepared from T24 cells were able to degrade the target duplex, and the activity was found to be present in the nuclear fraction at comparable levels to that in the cytoplasmic fractions.

An RNA gapmer oligonucleotide was synthesized that contained phosphorothioate linkages throughout the entire length of the molecule. Since this results in increased stability to single stranded nucleases, it was reasoned that it would inhibit cleavage of the antisense strand by the dsRNase as well. Therefore, to determine if the activity described above can cleave both strands in a RNA duplex molecule, a 9 RNA gapmer antisense oligonucleotide that contained phosphorothioate linkages in the wings between the 2 methoxy nucleotides but had phosphodiester linkages between the nine ribonucleotides in the gap was synthesized. A duplex composed of this <sup>32</sup>P-labeled 9 RNA gapmer phosphodiester/phosphorothioate oligonucleotide and its complementary oligoribonucleotide was tested as a substrate for double stranded RNase activity in T24 extracts. The activity was capable of cleaving the antisense strand of this duplex as well as the sense strand and the pattern of the digestion products indicated that cleavage was again restricted to the RNA:RNA phosphodiester portion of the duplex.

#### EXAMPLE 25

##### An RNA Gapmer oligonucleotide:RNA duplex is not a substrate for RNase H

To exclude the possibility that the cleavage shown in Example 23 might be due to RNase H, the ability of *E. coli* RNase H to cleave a 17 base pair duplex of the 9 gapmer oligoribonucleotide and its complementary 5' <sup>32</sup>P-labeled RNA in vitro was tested. FIG. 5 shows the expected shift in electrophoretic mobility when duplexes were formed and analyzed on a native gel next to the single stranded <sup>32</sup>P-end labeled RNA. As can be seen in FIG. 5 in the far right panel,

the 9 Gapmer oligoribonucleotide:RNA duplex was not a substrate for RNase H cleavage as no lower molecular weight bands appeared when it was treated with RNase H. However, as expected a full deoxy oligonucleotide:RNA duplex was cleaved by RNase H under the same conditions, as is evident by the appearance of lower molecular species in the enzyme treated lane (FIG. 5, left panel). A duplex composed of a 9 gapmer DNA oligonucleotide and its complementary RNA was a substrate for RNase H cleavage. The fact that the RNase H cleavage sites in this particular duplex were localized to the DNA:RNA portions of the duplex further demonstrates that the RNA gapmer oligoribonucleotide:RNA duplex is not a substrate for RNase H digestion.

It is interesting to note that RNase H cleavage of the 9 DNA gapmer oligonucleotide:RNA duplex (FIG. 5, left panel) and cleavage of the 9 RNA gapmer oligonucleotide:RNA duplex by T24 cellular extracts resulted in similar digestion products (see FIG. 4). Both RNase H and the activity in T24 cells displayed the same preferred cleavage sites on their respective duplexes. Moreover, at this site, both the oligonucleotides were roughly comparable in potency. Cleavage was restricted to the 3' end of the target RNA in the region opposite either the DNA or RNA gap of the respective antisense molecule.

While not wishing to be bound by any particular theory, the immediately preceding result suggests that RNase H and the dsRNase of the invention may share binding as well as mechanistic properties. However, analysis of DNA and RNA gapmer oligonucleotides targeting four sites on c-Raf mRNA revealed that RNase H and the dsRNase activity described here clearly have different substrate specificities. "RNA-like" gapmer oligonucleotides targeted to the c-Raf mRNA were not able to induce reduction in mRNA whereas RNase H active oligodeoxynucleotides targeted to the same site were able to reduce target mRNA levels. To determine if the lack of cleavage induced by the four c-Raf "RNA gapmers" in T24 cells was due to possible sequence specificity or cleavage, the four c-Raf "RNA-like gapmers," the ras "RNA-like gapmer" and the corresponding "DNA-like gapmers" were prehybridized to <sup>32</sup>P-labeled target oligoribonucleotides and incubated with T24 homogenates. The ras "RNA-like gapmer" supported cleavage of the ras target RNA almost as efficiently as the "DNA gapmer." However, only one of the "RNA-like gapmers" targeted to c-Raf segments (SEQ ID NO:8) supported any cleavage and the rate of cleavage for the "RNA-like gapmer" was much slower than the comparable "DNA-like gapmer." Thus, in contrast to RNase H, the dsRNase displays considerable sequence specificity.

#### EXAMPLE 26

##### Nuclease activity generates 5'-phosphate and 3'-hydroxyl termini

To determine the nature of the 5' termini left by nuclease cleavage of the duplex in vitro, non-labeled duplex was incubated with T24 cellular extracts as previously described then reacted with T4 polynucleotide kinase and [<sup>32</sup>P-γ-ATP] with or without prior treatment with calf intestinal phosphatase. Phosphatase treatment of the duplex products was seen to be essential for the incorporation of <sup>32</sup>P label during the reaction with polynucleotide kinase, indicating the presence of a phosphate group at the 5' termini. The 3' termini were evaluated by the reaction of duplex digestion products with T4 RNA ligase and <sup>32</sup>P-pCp. T4 RNA ligase requires a free 3'-hydroxyl terminus for the ligation of <sup>32</sup>P-pCp. The ability of the duplex digestion products to incorporate <sup>32</sup>P-pCp by T4 RNA ligase indicates the presence of 3'-hydroxyl groups.

## EXAMPLE 27

Purification and characterization of double-stranded ribonucleases from mammalian tissues

Purification and characterization of double-stranded ribonucleases from mammalian tissues

In order to determine if mammalian cells, other than cultured cell lines, contain double-strand RNase activity, and to provide a source from which such ribonucleases might be purified, the following efforts were undertaken to identify and purify dsRNases from rat liver homogenates.

## EXAMPLE 27-a

## Substrates and Assays for dsRNases

In preliminary experiments, double-strand RNase activity was observed in rat liver homogenates, but the homogenates also displayed high levels of single-strand RNases that complicated analysis of the dsRNase activities because of cleavage of the oligoribonucleotide overhangs after cleavage by the dsRNases. To solve this problem, two additional substrates and a non-denaturing gel assay were used. The "sense" strand was an oligoribonucleotide having phosphodiester linkages in an eight-base gap with flanks having either (a) residues with phosphorothioate linkages or (b) 2'-methoxynucleosides with phosphorothioate linkages. The "antisense" strand in both substrates contained 2'-methoxy phosphorothioate wings on either side of an eight-base ribonucleotide gap having either phosphodiester or phosphorothioate linkages (Table 1). Such dsRNase substrates were more stable to exonuclease digestion than an oligoribonucleotide and substrates with both phosphorothioate linkages and 2'-methoxy nucleosides was extremely stable. These features are important because of the abundance of single-strand RNases relative to the double-strand RNase activity in the rat liver and supported the use of non-denaturing assays.

TABLE 1

Artificial Substrates for Mammalian dsRNases*	
Ha-ras TARGETED SENSE/ANTISENSE OLIGONUCLEOTIDES	
SEQ ID NO:1	5'-GGG CGC CGU CGG UGU GG-3'
SEQ ID NO:2	3'- <b>CCC</b> GCG GCA GCC <b>ACA</b> CC-5'
C-raf TARGETED SENSE/ANTISENSE OLIGONUCLEOTIDES	
SEQ ID NO:3	5'-CCG AAU GUG ACC GCC UCC CG-3'
SEQ ID NO:4	3'- <b>GGC</b> UUA CAC UGG CGG <b>AGG</b> GC-5'
SEQ ID NO:5	5'-UCA AUG GAG CAC AUA CAG GG-3'
SEQ ID NO:6	3'- <b>AGU</b> UAC CUC GUG UAU <b>GUC</b> CC-5'
SEQ ID NO:7	5'-AAU GCA UGU CAC AGG CGG GA-3'
SEQ ID NO:8	3'- <b>UUA</b> CGU ACA GUG UCC <b>GCC</b> CU-5'

\*Emboldened residues indicate 2'-methoxynucleotide residues in the "antisense" strands.

Both rat liver cytosolic and nuclear extracts induced cleavage of the duplex substrate. Both extracts resulted in more rapidly migrating bands on native gel electrophoretic analyses. The cytosolic extract appeared to be more active than the nuclear extract. A double-strand RNase, RNase V1 (Pharma-

cia, Piscataway, N.J.) cleaved the substrate; T24 extracts also cleaved the substrate. Neither bacterial nor single-strand RNase cleaved the substrate, with the exception of RNase A, which at very high concentrations resulted in some cleavage.

5 It is unclear whether that cleavage was due to a contaminating double-strand RNase or if RNase A can, under some conditions, cleave double-strand substrates.

## EXAMPLE 27-b

## Purification of dsRNases from rat liver cytosolic and nuclear extracts

In order to purify the mammalian dsRNase identified here, 0.5 kg of rat liver was homogenized in Buffer X [10 mM Hepes (ph 7.5), 25 mM KCl, 0.15 mM spermine, 0.5 mM spermidine, 1 mM EDTA, 2 M sucrose, 10% glycerol; all reagents from Sigma Chemical Co., St. Louis, Mo.] and centrifuged in a Beckman J2-21M centrifuge (Beckman, Fullerton, Calif.) at 10,000 rpm for 1.5 hours. The supernatant was precipitated with 40% ammonium sulfate (Sigma). All the dsRNase activity was recovered in the 40% ammonium sulfate precipitate. The pellet was resuspended in Buffer A [20 mM Hepes (ph 6.5), 5 mM EDTA, 1 mM DTT, 0.25 mM phenylmethylsulfonyl fluoride (PMSF), 0.1 M KCl, 5% glycerol, 0.1% NP40, 0.1% Triton X-100; all reagents from Sigma] and dialyzed to remove ammonium sulfate. Approximately 40 g of cytosolic extract were obtained from 0.5 kg liver.

A crude nuclear pellet, prepared as in the previous Examples, was resuspended and homogenized in Buffer Y [20 mM Hepes (ph 7.5), 0.42 M NaCl, 1.5 mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>, 0.2 mM EDTA, 0.5 mM DTT, 0.5 mM PMSF, 25% glycerol]. The homogenate was centrifuged in a J2-21M centrifuge (Beckman) at 10,000 rpm for 1.5 hrs. The supernatant was precipitated with 70% ammonium sulfate. The pellet was resuspended in Buffer A and dialyzed. All the dsRNase activity was recovered in the 70% ammonium sulfate precipitate. Approximately 5 g of nuclear extract were obtained from 0.5 kg liver.

Ion exchange chromatography was then performed in order to further purify the dsRNases of the invention. Nuclear and cytosolic extracts in Buffer A were loaded onto Hi-Trap columns (Pharmacia, Piscataway, N.J.) for FPLC. The extracts were eluted with a linear gradient of NaCl and samples were collected. The UV absorption at 257 nm of the samples was determined. Samples were centrifuged at 8,000 g for 10 minutes, resuspended in Buffer A, concentrated in Ultrafree-15 centrifugal filter devices (Millipore, Bedford, Mass.) and analyzed for activity. The dsRNase activity eluted in fractions corresponding 300-450 mM NaCl. In contrast, the dsRNase activity in the nuclear extract eluted at 700-800 mM NaCl.

Fractions from the ion exchange chromatography were concentrated and subjected to size exclusion chromatography. Active samples from the ion exchange chromatography were pooled, applied to a TSK G-3000 column (TosoHaas, Montgomeryville, Pa.) and run with Buffer A containing 100 mM NaCl. Samples (200 to 400 ul) were collected and their UV absorption at 257 nm was determined. Samples were concentrated using Ultrafree-15 centrifugal filter devices (Millipore) and then analyzed for activity.

FIG. 6 shows a polyacrylamide gel electrophoretic analysis of the concentrated active fractions after the ion-exchange chromatography, and the fractions from the size exclusion chromatography. The fraction with greatest dsRNase activity (lane 4, FIG. 6) had a molecular weight range of about 50 to

about 80 kilodaltons, and a band at approximately 50 kilodaltons appeared to be enhanced on 12% polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (PAGE) performed using precast gels (Novex, San Diego, Calif.).

Table 2 provides a summary of the purification and recovery of dsRNase activities from nuclear and cytosolic liver extracts.

TABLE 2

Summary of Purification of dsRNases from Rat Liver Homogenates					
Fraction	Protein (mg)	Total Activity (units*)	Specific Activity (unit/mg)	Purification Factor	Recovery (%)
Cytosolic extract	30,000	1,020,000	34	1	100
Ion Exchange (Pool)	991	459,000	463	14	56
Gel Filtration	18.4	100,980	5,600	165	22

One unit is defined as the amount of sample required to digest 10 fMol dsRNA duplex in 15 minutes at 37° C. under the conditions described herein.

Purification of the dsRNase use activities from liver nuclei and cytosol suggests that at least two dsRNases with differing properties are capable of cleaving double-strand RNA. The nuclear dsRNase eluted at higher NaCl concentrations from the ion exchange column than the cytosolic dsRNase. However, both require Mg<sup>++</sup> and cleave at several sites within the oligoribonucleotide gap. Both require a duplex substrate and can cleave oligoribonucleotides in a duplex that is made up of oligoribonucleotide "sense" and a 2' methoxy phosphorothioate chimeric "antisense" strand when the duplex has phosphorothioate or phosphorothioate-2' methoxy nucleoside wings.

Having (1) established a reproducible and activity-specific assay for, (2) determined several sources of and (3) achieved an adequate degree of purification of the dsRNases of the invention via the methods described above, the dsRNases are further purified by a variety of means. In all instances, the use of organic solvents is avoided as the dsRNases of the invention are unstable in acetonitrile or methanol (see below), and the assays described herein are used to evaluate the presence or absence of the desired dsRNase in a sample. Further purification steps may include, but are not limited to, the following means.

Several types of heparin columns have been used to purify a variety of ribonucleases. For example, Sepharose columns have been utilized in the purification of a sequence-specific ribonuclease from *Rana catesbeiana* (bullfrog) oocytes (Liao, *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1992, 20, 1371), a ribonuclease from *Xenopus laevis* oocytes (Nitta et al., *Biol. Pharm. Bull. (Jpn.)*, 1993, 16, 353), several ribonucleases from the thermophilic archaeobacterium *Sulfolobus solfataricus* (Fusi et al., *Eur. J. Biochem.*, 1993, 211, 305), and a ribonuclease from human spleen (Yasuda et al., *Eur. J. Biochem.*, 1990, 191, 523).

Hydrophobic interaction chromatography is a powerful protein purification means which depends on strong salting-out salts to increase the hydrophobic interactions between the desired protein and a ligand therefor (Narhi et al., *Anal. Biochem.*, 1989, 182, 266). Hydrophobic interaction columns (HICs) have been used to purify ribonuclease A from undesired contaminants (Wu et al., *Methods in Enzymology*, 1996, 270, 27; Wetlaufer et al., *J. Chromatography*, 1986, 359, 55).

The dsRNases of the invention may also be further purified by hydroxyapatite chromatography (Kennedy, *Methods in Enzymology*, 1990, 182, 339). Endo- and exo-ribonuclease have been purified from *Trypanosoma brucei* using hydroxyapatite chromatography (Gbenle, *Exp. Parasitol.*, 1990, 71, 432; Gbenle, *Mol. Biochem. Parasitol.*, 1985, 15, 37).

RNA affinity columns may also be used to further purify the dsRNases of the invention. In particular, a commercially available double-stranded RNA affinity column (Pharmacia, Piscataway, N.J.) may be used. Alternatively, a column is prepared in which the matrix thereof comprises one or more of the dsRNase substrates of the invention (for details, see the following Example). Due to the relative sequence specificity of the dsRNase of the present invention, the latter type of affinity column may be preferable. In order to prevent degradation of the matrix of either type of double-stranded affinity matrix, samples comprising the dsRNases of the invention are treated in such a manner so as to limit the degradative capacity of the dsRNase without significantly altering its ability to bind to the double-stranded RNA substrate of the matrix. For example, the degradative activity of the dsRNase of the invention is inhibited in solutions lacking available Mg<sup>++</sup> due to, for example, the addition of appropriate chelating agents such as EDTA, or by addition of NaCl to a sample containing such dsRNases to a final concentration of at least 300 mM (see the following subsection).

Those skilled in the art will recognize that the above means, as well as others not herein described, will need to be optimized for optimal efficiency in purifying the dsRNases of the invention. For example, the selection of one or more of the above means as a further purification step, and of the order in which such means are applied, will effect the degree of purity and specific activity of the dsRNase so treated. However, such optimization is believed to be within the skill of the art given that the assays described herein can be readily utilized by a skilled artisan to determine the effect of further purification steps on the activity of the desired dsRNase. Other techniques known in the art, such as SDS-PAGE, can be used to determine the purity of samples subjected to the above purification means.

## EXAMPLE 27-c

## Characterization of purified mammalian dsRNases

The effects of various conditions on the dsRNase activity were evaluated using the active fractions after ion exchange chromatography. The dsRNase activity was demonstrable in Tris or phosphate buffers from about pH 7 to about pH 10. The dsRNase activity was not stable in solution in acetonitrile or methanol. Furthermore, the activity was inhibited by NaCl; dsRNase activity was inhibited by 30% at 10 mM NaCl, >60% at 100 mM NaCl and 100% at 300 mM NaCl. Heating for five minutes at 60° C., 80° C. or 100° C., inactivated the dsRNase. Optimum activity was seen in the temperature range of about 37° C. to about 42° C. At 25° C., the dsRNase activity was approximately 50 k of that observed at 37° C. The dsRNase activity was inhibited at 10, 20 and 50 mM EDTA, but not at 5 mM, in agreement with its requirement for Mg<sup>++</sup>, and was stable to multiple freeze/thaws.

59

## EXAMPLE 28

Further characterization of the dsRNase cleavage site using purified rat dsRNase

The purified dsRNases were used to characterize the site of cleavage in more detail. Because it was necessary to minimize any single-strand cleavage from occurring after endonuclease cleavage and during handling, particularly after denaturing of the duplex. Consequently, the most stable duplex substrate, i.e., one in which both strands of the duplex contained flanking regions comprised of 2' methoxy nucleosides and phosphorothioate linkages was used.

## EXAMPLE 28-a

<sup>32</sup>P labeling of oligonucleotides

The sense oligonucleotide was 5'-end labeled with <sup>32</sup>P using [<sup>32</sup>P]ATP, T4 polynucleotide kinase, and standard procedures (Ausubel et al., 1989). The labeled oligonucleotide was purified by electrophoresis on 12% denaturing PAGE (Sambrook et al., 1989). The specific activity of the labeled oligonucleotide was approximately 5000 cpm/fmol.

## EXAMPLE 28-b

## Double-strand RNA digestion assay

Oligonucleotide duplexes were prepared in 30 uL reaction buffer [20 mM tris-HCl (pH 7.5), 20 mM KCl, 10 mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>, 0.1 mM DTT] containing 10 nM antisense oligonucleotide and 10<sup>5</sup> cpm <sup>32</sup>P labeled sense oligonucleotide. Reactions were heated at 90° C. for 5 min and incubated at 37° C. for 2 h. The oligonucleotide duplexes were incubated in either unpurified and semipurified cellular extracts at a total protein concentration of 75 ug unpurified cytosolic extract, 60 ug unpurified nuclear extract, 5 ug ion exchange purified cytosolic fraction, 5 ug ion exchange purified nuclear fraction, or 0.5 ug ion exchange and gel filtration purified nuclear fraction. Digestion reactions were incubated at 37° C. for 0-240 min. Following incubation, 10 uL of each reaction was removed and quenched by addition of denaturing gel loading buffer [5 uL 8 M urea, 0.25% xylene cyanole FF, 0.25% bromphenol blue]. The reactions were heated at 95° C. for 5 min and resolved in a 12% denaturing polyacrylamide gel. The remaining aliquot was quenched in 2 uL native gel loading buffer [glycerol, 0.25% xylene cyanole FF. The reactions were resolved at 10° C. in a 12% native polyacrylamide gel containing 44 mM Tris-borate and 1 mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>. Gels were analyzed using a Molecular Dynamics Phosphorimager.

FIG. 7 displays the native gel results. Lane 1 shows the position at which the untreated <sup>32</sup>P-labeled sense strand migrated in the native gel, and lane 2 shows "sense" strand RNA treated with 0.02 units RNase V1. In the remaining lanes, the results of treatment of dsRNase substrates with 0.02 (lane 3) and 0.002 (lane 4) units of RNase V1, unpurified nuclear extract for 0 minutes (lane 5) or 240 minutes (lane 6), unpurified nuclear extract for 240 minutes without Mg<sup>++</sup> (lane 7), unpurified cytosolic extract for 240 minutes (lane 8), ion exchange purified cytosolic extract for 240 minutes in the presence (lane 9) or absence (lane 10) of Mg<sup>++</sup>, and ion exchange/gel filtration purified cytosolic extract for 240 minutes in the presence (lane 9) or absence (lane 10) of Mg<sup>++</sup> are shown.

FIG. 8 shows the results of analysis of products of digestion of dsRNase substrates by denaturing polyacrylamide gel

60

electrophoresis. Lane 1 shows "sense" strand RNA treated with 5×10<sup>-3</sup> units of RNase A, and lane 2 shows "sense" strand RNA treated with 0.02 units RNase V1. The remaining lanes show dsRNase products treated with 0.02 (lane 3) and 0.002 (lane 4) units of RNase V1, with unpurified nuclear extract for 0 minutes (lane 5) or 240 minutes (lane 6), with unpurified cytosolic extract for 240 minutes (lane 7), with ion exchange purified cytosolic extract for 240 minutes (lane 8), and with ion exchange/gel filtration purified cytosolic extract for 240 minutes (lane 9). Lane 10 is an RNA base hydrolysis ladder included for sizing purpose. RNase V1 digestion of the single-strand substrate resulted in little degradation (lane 2). RNase V1 digestion of the duplex resulted in degradates reflecting cleavage at several sites within the gap (lanes 3 and 4). In lanes 4-9, the band at the top of the gel demonstrates that even after denaturation, some of the duplex remained annealed, reflecting the very high affinity of duplexes comprised to 2'-methoxy nucleosides. Lanes 6-9 show that both the nuclear and cytosolic ribonucleases cleaved the triplex substrate at several sites with the oligoribonucleotide gap and that the sites of degradation were different from those of RNase V1. The position of the degradates in lanes 6-9 is consistent with them being the 2' methoxy phosphorothioate flanking regions (wings).

## EXAMPLE 29

## RNA affinity columns and methods of purifying ribonucleases

Techniques for preparing nucleic acid affinity columns are known in the art (see, e.g., Kadonaga, *Methods in Enzymology*, 1991, 208, 10). Such affinity columns comprise a matrix comprising a nucleic acid substrate for a desired compound that binds the substrate either nonspecifically or in a sequence-specific manner. Initially utilized in the purification of DNA-binding proteins, RNA affinity columns have also been employed to purify RNA-binding proteins and ribonucleases (see, e.g., Prokipcak et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 1994, 269, 9261; Dake et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 1988, 263, 7691). A matrix comprising one or more dsRNase substrates of the invention has the advantage of providing a dsRNA substrate that is resistant to the action of single-stranded ribonuclease which are prevalent in many tissues and cells. Such a matrix also comprises a suitable solid support and a linker that provides a bridge between the solid support and the dsRNase substrate(s).

Suitable solid supports include, but are not limited to, graft polymers (U.S. Pat. No. 4,908,405 to Bayer and Rapp); polyacrylamide (Fahy et al., *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1993, 21, 1819); polyacrylmorpholide, polystyrene and derivatized polystyrene resins (Syvanen et al., *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1988, 16, 11327; U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,373,071 and 4,401,796 to Itakura), including amino methyl styrene resins (U.S. Pat. No. 4,507,433 to Miller and Ts'O); copolymers of N-vinylpyrrolidone and vinylacetate (Selinger et al., *Tetrahedron Letts.*, 1973, 31, 2911; Selinger et al., *Die Makromolekulare Chemie*, 1975, 176, 609; and Selinger, *Die Makromolekulare Chemie*, 1975, 176, 1611); *TEFLON*<sup>TM</sup> (Lohrmann et al., *DNA*, 1984, 3, 122; Duncan et al., *Anal. Biochem.*, 1988, 169, 104); controlled pore glass (Chow et al., *Anal. Biochem.*, 1988, 175, 63); polysaccharide supports such as agarose (Kadonaga, *Methods Enzymol.*, 1991, 208, 10; Arndt-Jovin et al., *Eur. J. Biochem.*, 1975, 54, 411; Wu et al., *Science*, 1987, 238, 1247; Blank et al., *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 1988, 16, 10283) or cellulose (Goldkorn et al., *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1986, 14, 9171; Alberts et al., *Meth. Enzymol.*, 1971, 21, 198) or derivatives thereof,

## 61

e.g., DEAE-cellulose (Schott, *J. Chromatogr.*, 1975, 115, 461) or phosphocellulose (Siddell, *Eur. J. Biochem.*, 1978, 92, 621; Bunemann et al., *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1982, 10, 7163; Noyes et al., *Cell*, 1975, 5, 301; Bunemann et al., *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1982, 10, 7181); dextran sulfate (Gingeras et al., *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1987, 15, 5373); polypropylene (Matson et al., *Anal. Biochem.*, 1994, 217, 306); agarose beads (Kadonaga et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 1986, 83, 5889); latex particles (Kawaguchi et al., *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 1989, 17, 6229); nylon beads (Van Ness et al., *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1991, 19, 3345); paramagnetic beads (Gabrielson et al., *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1989, 17, 6253; Lund, et al., *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1988, 16, 10861; Day et al., *Biochem. J.*, 1991, 278, 735); silica gels (Yashima et al., *J. Chromatogr.*, 1992, 603, 111); derivatized forms of silica gels, polytetrafluoroethylene, cellulose or metallic oxides (U.S. Pat. No. 4,812,512 to Buendia); and art-recognized equivalents of any of the preceding solid supports; microtiter plates (Drmanac et al., *Science*, 1993, 260, 1649); crosslinked copolymers of N-vinylpyrrolidone, other N-vinyl-lactam monomers and an ethylenically unsaturated monomer having at least one amine or amine-displacable functionality as disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,391,667. In one set of preferred embodiments, polystyrene or long chain alkyl CPG (controlled pore glass) beads are employed. In another set of preferred embodiments, microscopic glass slides are employed (Fodor et al., *Science*, 1991, 251, 767; Maskos et al., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 1992, 20, 1679; Guo et al., 1994, 22, 5456; Pease et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 1994, 91, 5022).

With regard to the linker, a variety of chemical linking groups or chains may be employed in the matrices of the invention. Any chemical group or chain capable of forming a chemical linkage between the solid support and the dsRNase substrate may be employed. A suitable linker has the preferred characteristic of non-reactivity with compounds intro-

## 62

duced during the various steps of oligonucleotide synthesis. It will be appreciated by those skilled in the art that the chemical composition of the solid support and the dsRNase substrate will influence the choice of the linker. Many suitable linkers will comprise a primary amine group at either or both termini, as many chemical reactions are known in the art for linking primary amine groups to a variety of other chemical groups; however, other terminal reactive moieties are known and may be used in the invention. Suitable linkers include, but are not limited to, linkers having a terminal thiol group for introducing a disulfide linkages to the solid support (Day et al., *Biochem. J.*, 1991, 278, 735; Zuckermann et al., *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 15, 5305); linkers having a terminal bromoacetyl group for introducing a thiol-bromoacetyl linkage to the solid support (Fahy et al., *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1993, 21, 1819); linkers having a terminal amino group which can be reacted with an activated 5' phosphate of an oligonucleotide (Takeda et al., *Tetrahedron Letts.*, 1983, 24, 245; Smith et al., *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1985, 13, 2399; Zarytova et al., *Anal. Biochem.*, 1990, 188, 214); poly(ethyleneimine) (Van Ness et al., *Nucl. Acids Res.*, 1991, 19, 3345); acyl chains (Akashi et al., *Chem. Lett.*, 1988, 1093; Yashima et al., *J. Chromatogr.*, 1992, 603, 111); polyvinyl alcohol (Schott, *J. Chromatogr.*, 1975, 115, 461); alkyl chains (Goss et al., *J. Chromatogr.*, 1990, 508, 279); alkylamine chains (Pon et al. *BioTechniques*, 1988, 6, 768); biotin-avidin or biotin-streptavidin linkages (Kasher et al., *Mol. Cell. Biol.*, 1986, 6, 3117; Chodosh et al., *Mol. Cell. Biol.*, 1986, 6, 4723; Fishell et al., *Methods Enzymol.*, 1990, 184, 328); and art-recognized equivalents of any of the preceding linkers. In a preferred embodiment of the invention, an n-aminoalkyl chain is the linker. Methods of determining an appropriate (i.e., providing the optimal degree and specificity of hybridization between the sensor array and the target oligonucleotide) linker length are known in the art (see, e.g., Day et al., *Biochem. J.*, 1991, 278, 735).

## SEQUENCE LISTING

<160> NUMBER OF SEQ ID NOS: 9

<210> SEQ ID NO 1  
 <211> LENGTH: 17  
 <212> TYPE: RNA  
 <213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence  
 <220> FEATURE:  
 <223> OTHER INFORMATION: Oligonucleotide

<400> SEQUENCE: 1

gggcgccguc ggugugg

17

<210> SEQ ID NO 2  
 <211> LENGTH: 17  
 <212> TYPE: RNA  
 <213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence  
 <220> FEATURE:  
 <223> OTHER INFORMATION: Oligonucleotide

<400> SEQUENCE: 2

ccgcggcag ccacacc

17

<210> SEQ ID NO 3  
 <211> LENGTH: 20  
 <212> TYPE: RNA  
 <213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence  
 <220> FEATURE:

-continued

---

<223> OTHER INFORMATION: Oligonucleotide

<400> SEQUENCE: 3

ccgaauguga cgcgcccg 20

<210> SEQ ID NO 4

<211> LENGTH: 20

<212> TYPE: RNA

<213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence

<220> FEATURE:

<223> OTHER INFORMATION: Oligonucleotide

<400> SEQUENCE: 4

ggcuuacacu ggcggaggc 20

<210> SEQ ID NO 5

<211> LENGTH: 20

<212> TYPE: RNA

<213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence

<220> FEATURE:

<223> OTHER INFORMATION: Oligonucleotide

<400> SEQUENCE: 5

ucaauggagc acauacagg 20

<210> SEQ ID NO 6

<211> LENGTH: 20

<212> TYPE: RNA

<213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence

<220> FEATURE:

<223> OTHER INFORMATION: Oligonucleotide

<400> SEQUENCE: 6

aguuaccucg uguaugucc 20

<210> SEQ ID NO 7

<211> LENGTH: 20

<212> TYPE: RNA

<213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence

<220> FEATURE:

<223> OTHER INFORMATION: Oligonucleotide

<400> SEQUENCE: 7

aaugcauguc acaggcgga 20

<210> SEQ ID NO 8

<211> LENGTH: 20

<212> TYPE: RNA

<213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence

<220> FEATURE:

<223> OTHER INFORMATION: Oligonucleotide

<400> SEQUENCE: 8

uuacguacag uguccgccc 20

<210> SEQ ID NO 9

<211> LENGTH: 17

<212> TYPE: RNA

<213> ORGANISM: Artificial Sequence

<220> FEATURE:

<223> OTHER INFORMATION: Oligonucleotide

<400> SEQUENCE: 9

ccacaccgac ggcgccc 17

---

65

What is claimed is:

**1.** A method of activating a double-stranded RNA nuclease, comprising:

(i) contacting the nuclease with a double-stranded oligomeric compound comprising a first oligonucleotide and a second oligonucleotide, wherein:

at least one of said first and said second oligonucleotides comprises at least four consecutive 2'-hydroxyl ribonucleosides and at least one chemical modification; said first and said second oligonucleotides are hybridized to each other;

said first and said second oligonucleotides are not covalently linked to each other; and wherein

said first and said second oligonucleotides are each independently from 15 to 25 nucleoside subunits in length; and

(ii) detecting activation of said double-stranded RNA nuclease.

**2.** The method of claim **1**, wherein the at least one chemical modification increases resistance of said oligonucleotide to single-stranded nucleases and/or increases the affinity of said oligonucleotide to the other oligonucleotide.

**3.** The method of claim **2**, wherein at least one modification is 2'-methoxy.

**4.** The method of claim **2**, wherein at least one modification is 2'-fluoro.

**5.** The method of claim **2**, wherein at least one modification is 2'-O-methoxyethyl.

**6.** The method of claim **2**, wherein at least one modification is a phosphorothioate internucleoside linkage.

**7.** The method of claim **1**, wherein said first oligonucleotide and said second oligonucleotide each have at least four consecutive 2'-hydroxyl ribonucleosides.

**8.** The method of claim **7**, wherein the 2'-hydroxyl residues of said first and said second oligonucleotides have phosphodiester linkages.

**9.** The method of claim **7**, wherein the 2'-hydroxyl residues of said first and said second oligonucleotides have phosphorothioate linkages.

**10.** The method of claim **7**, wherein the 2'-hydroxyl residues of said first oligonucleotide have phosphodiester linkages and the 2'-hydroxyl residues of said second oligonucleotide have phosphorothioate linkages.

**11.** The method of claim **7** or claim **10**, wherein said first and said second oligonucleotides further comprise flanking residues 5' and 3' of the 2'-hydroxyl ribonucleosides, wherein said flanking residues have phosphorothioate linkages.

**12.** The method of claim **11**, wherein said flanking residues of at least one of said first and said second oligonucleotides further comprises 2'-methoxynucleosides.

**13.** The method of claim **11**, wherein said flanking residues of each of said first and said second oligonucleotides further comprise 2'-methoxynucleosides.

**14.** The method of claim **1**, wherein at least one of said first and said second oligonucleotides comprises at least eight consecutive 2'-hydroxyl ribonucleosides.

**15.** The method of claim **14**, wherein said first oligonucleotide and said second oligonucleotide each comprise at least eight consecutive 2'-hydroxyl ribonucleotides.

**16.** The method of claim **1**, wherein each of said first and said second oligonucleotides are about 17 to about 20 nucleoside subunits in length.

**17.** The method of claim **16**, wherein each of said first and said second oligonucleotides are 17 subunits in length.

**18.** The method of claim **16**, wherein each of said first and said second oligonucleotides are 20 subunits in length.

66

**19.** A method of activating a double-stranded RNA nuclease comprising contacting the double-stranded RNA nuclease with a double-stranded oligomeric compound comprising a first oligonucleotide and a second oligonucleotide, wherein:

said first and said second oligonucleotides are each independently 15 to 25 nucleoside subunits in length;

said first and said second oligonucleotides are hybridized to each other;

said first and said second oligonucleotides are not covalently linked to each other; and

at least one of said first and said second oligonucleotides comprises at least four consecutive 2'-hydroxyl ribonucleosides and at least one chemical modification.

**20.** The method of claim **19** wherein at least one chemical modification increases resistance to single-stranded nucleases.

**21.** The method of claim **19** wherein at least one chemical modification increases affinity of said first oligonucleotide to said second oligonucleotide.

**22.** The method of claim **19** wherein at least one chemical modification is a modified internucleoside linkage, a modified sugar moiety or a modified nucleobase.

**23.** The method of claim **19** wherein at least one chemical modification is a phosphorothioate internucleoside linkage.

**24.** The method of claim **19** wherein at least one chemical modification is a 2'-substituted sugar modification.

**25.** The method of claim **19** wherein at least one chemical modification is a 2'-alkoxy sugar modification.

**26.** The method of claim **19** wherein at least one chemical modification is a 2'-methoxy sugar modification.

**27.** The method of claim **19** wherein at least one chemical modification is a 2'-fluoro sugar modification.

**28.** The method of claim **19** wherein at least one chemical modification is a 2'-O-methoxyethyl sugar modification.

**29.** The method of claim **19** wherein each of said first and said second oligonucleotides comprises at least four consecutive 2'-hydroxyl ribonucleosides.

**30.** The method of claim **19** wherein each of said first and said second oligonucleotides comprises at least one chemical modification.

**31.** The method of claim **19** wherein each of said first and said second oligonucleotides comprises at least four consecutive 2'-hydroxyl ribonucleosides and at least one chemical modification.

**32.** The method of claim **19** wherein said first oligonucleotide and said second oligonucleotide comprise at least 17 contiguous nucleotides which are 100% complementary to each other.

**33.** The method of claim **19** wherein said first oligonucleotide is 100% complementary to said second oligonucleotide.

**34.** The method of claim **19** wherein said first oligonucleotide and said second oligonucleotide are independently 17 to 20 nucleoside subunits in length.

**35.** The method of claim **19** further comprising detecting activation of said double-stranded RNA nuclease.

**36.** A method of activating a double-stranded RNA nuclease comprising contacting the double-stranded RNA nuclease with a double-stranded oligomeric compound comprising a first oligonucleotide and a second oligonucleotide, wherein:

said first and said second oligonucleotides are each independently 15 to 25 nucleoside subunits in length;

said first and said second oligonucleotides are hybridized to each other;

said first and said second oligonucleotides are not covalently linked to each other; and

67

at least one of said first and said second oligonucleotides comprises: a plurality of nucleoside subunits with 2'-hydroxyl pentofuranosyl sugar moieties; and at least one chemical modification.

37. The method of claim 36 wherein at least one chemical modification increases resistance to single-stranded nucleases.

38. The method of claim 36 wherein at least one chemical modification increases affinity of said first oligonucleotide to said second oligonucleotide.

39. The method of claim 36 wherein at least one chemical modification is a modified internucleoside linkage, a modified sugar moiety or a modified nucleobase.

40. The method of claim 36 wherein at least one chemical modification is a phosphorothioate internucleoside linkage.

41. The method of claim 36 wherein at least one chemical modification is a 2'-substituted sugar modification.

42. The method of claim 36 wherein at least one chemical modification is a 2'-alkoxy sugar modification.

43. The method of claim 36 wherein at least one chemical modification is a 2'-methoxy sugar modification.

44. The method of claim 36 wherein at least one chemical modification is a 2'-fluoro sugar modification.

45. The method of claim 36 wherein at least one chemical modification is a 2'-O-methoxyethyl sugar modification.

46. The method of claim 36 wherein each of said first and said second oligonucleotides comprises a plurality of nucleoside subunits with 2'-hydroxyl pentofuranosyl sugar moieties.

47. The method of claim 36 wherein each of said first and said second oligonucleotides comprises at least one chemical modification.

48. The method of claim 36 wherein each of said first and said second oligonucleotides comprises a plurality of nucleoside subunits with 2'-hydroxyl pentofuranosyl sugar moieties and at least one chemical modification.

49. The method of claim 36 wherein said first oligonucleotide and said second oligonucleotide comprise at least 17 contiguous nucleotides which are 100% complementary to each other.

50. The method of claim 36 wherein said first oligonucleotide is 100% complementary to said second oligonucleotide.

51. The method of claim 36 wherein said first oligonucleotide and said second oligonucleotide are independently 17 to 20 nucleoside subunits in length.

52. The method of claim 36 further comprising detecting activation of said double-stranded RNA nuclease.

53. A method of activating a double-stranded RNA nuclease comprising contacting the double-stranded RNA nuclease with a double-stranded oligomeric compound comprising a first oligonucleotide and a second oligonucleotide, wherein:

said first and said second oligonucleotides are hybridized to each other;

said first and said second oligonucleotides are not covalently linked to each other;

said first and said second oligonucleotides are each independently from 15 to 25 nucleoside subunits in length; and

each of said first and said second oligonucleotides comprises at least four consecutive 2'-hydroxyl ribonucleosides and at least one chemical modification.

68

54. The method of claim 53 wherein at least one chemical modification increases resistance to single-stranded nucleases.

55. The method of claim 53 wherein at least one chemical modification increases affinity of said first oligonucleotide to said second oligonucleotide.

56. The method of claim 53 wherein at least one chemical modification is a modified internucleoside linkage, a modified sugar moiety or a modified nucleobase.

57. The method of claim 53 wherein at least one chemical modification is a phosphorothioate internucleoside linkage.

58. The method of claim 53 wherein at least one chemical modification is a 2'-substituted sugar modification.

59. The method of claim 53 wherein at least one chemical modification is a 2'-alkoxy sugar modification.

60. The method of claim 53 wherein at least one chemical modification is a 2'-methoxy sugar modification.

61. The method of claim 53 wherein at least one chemical modification is a 2'-fluoro sugar modification.

62. The method of claim 53 wherein at least one chemical modification is a 2'-O-methoxyethyl sugar modification.

63. The method of claim 53 further comprising detecting activation of said double-stranded RNA nuclease.

64. A method of activating a double-stranded RNA nuclease comprising contacting the double-stranded RNA nuclease with a double-stranded oligomeric compound comprising a first oligonucleotide and a second oligonucleotide, wherein:

said first and said second oligonucleotides are hybridized to each other;

said first and said second oligonucleotides are not covalently linked to each other;

said first and said second oligonucleotides are 100% complementary to each other; and

at least one of said first and said second oligonucleotides comprises at least four consecutive 2'-hydroxyl ribonucleosides and at least one chemical modification.

65. The method of claim 64 wherein at least one chemical modification increases resistance to single-stranded nucleases.

66. The method of claim 64 wherein at least one chemical modification increases affinity of said first oligonucleotide to said second oligonucleotide.

67. The method of claim 64 wherein at least one chemical modification is a modified internucleoside linkage, a modified sugar moiety or a modified nucleobase.

68. The method of claim 64 wherein at least one chemical modification is a phosphorothioate internucleoside linkage.

69. The method of claim 64 wherein at least one chemical modification is a 2'-substituted sugar modification.

70. The method of claim 64 wherein at least one chemical modification is a 2'-alkoxy sugar modification.

71. The method of claim 64 wherein at least one chemical modification is a 2'-methoxy sugar modification.

72. The method of claim 64 wherein at least one chemical modification is a 2'-fluoro sugar modification.

73. The method of claim 64 wherein at least one chemical modification is a 2'-O-methoxyethyl sugar modification.

74. The method of claim 64 further comprising detecting activation of said double-stranded RNA nuclease.

75. The method of claim 36, wherein the double-stranded RNA nuclease is not in a cell.

\* \* \* \* \*